



The Prose Life of Alexander





This book belongs to

THE LIBRARY
of
VICTORIA UNIVERSITY
Toronto 5, Canada

The Prose Life of Alexander.

(THORNTON MS.)

EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY.

Original Series, 143.

1913 (*for* 1911).

PRICE 10s.

OXFORD : HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Original Series
No. 143.

The Prose Life of Alexander.

FROM THE THORNTON MS.

EDITED BY

J. S. WESTLAKE, M.A.

THE TEXT.

*

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

AND BY HUMPHREY MILFORD, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

1913 (*for* 1911)

19 W
2
D. 143
1

97824

FEB 8 1965



PREFATORY NOTE

THE delay in issuing this important prose romance has been due to the prolonged illness of its editor, Mr. J. S. Westlake. Even now Mr. Westlake has not been able to attend to the revision and publication of the book. The collation with the manuscript has been made for the Society by Miss E. M. Thompson, the proofs have been read over by Mr. John Munro, and a few changes have been made in the side-notes, foot-notes and head-lines, which otherwise remain as Mr. Westlake left them. The translations from the Latin text which make good the lacunae in the manuscript have also been inserted by Mr. Westlake.

The Introduction, together with the Notes and Glossary, are reserved for a future volume. Mr. Westlake's elaborate side-notes provide, meanwhile, a useful epitome of the story.

The Society is greatly indebted to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln for depositing the manuscript in the British Museum, and to the Keeper of the Manuscripts, Mr. J. P. Gilson, for receiving it there.

I. G.

THE PROSE LIFE OF ALEXANDER.

LIFE OF ALEXANDER

THE most learned Egyptians who know of the size of the earth, the waves of the sea, and the order of the heavens (betokening the way of the stars and the turning of the skies), have bequeathed these things to the whole world through the highness and the wisdom of magic knowledge. And they tell of a king of that land, by name Anectanabus, great in understanding, and full of love in astrology and mathematics. Now, upon a day it happened that a messenger came, and said unto him that Artaxerxes, king of the Persians, was drawing nigh towards him with a very great force of foes. Yet he did not call out his army, nor get ready his advance. Instead of this, he hurried into his bed-chambers in his palace, and, taking down a brazen shell, which was full of rain-water, and holding in his hand a brazen rod, sought by magic spells to summon the devils. By which wizardry he felt, in the shell itself, the fleets sailing over him amid fearful affray.

Of the Wisdom of the Egyptians and of their king Anectanabus.

How Anectanabus saw by wizardry the oncoming of the Persian hosts.

Now there were lords of Anectanabus set in sway over his armies to guard the Persian border.

And one hapless man coming to him, besought him: 'O most mighty King Anectanabus, there ariseth against thee Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, with an untold horde of foes and strange races. For they are Parthians, Medes, Persians, Syrians, Mesopotamians, Brapes, Phares, Argiri, Chaldaeans, Bachiri, Confires, Hircanians, and Agiophii, and many other folks coming from Eastern lands.' On hearing this, Anectanabus said, sighing: 'The trust that I gave to thee, heed thou right well; yet thy prowess hath not been the prowess of a doughty man, but the doings of a cowardly fellow. For worth showeth itself, not in the greatness of the folk, but in the steadfastness of their souls. Dost thou not know one lion putteth many

A lord of the Marshes tells him of the advancing myriads of foes and is chidden for his cowardice.

2 *Anectanabus's flight from the Persians. He greets Olympias.*

The king
sees his
further ill-
luck by
wizardry.

does to flight?' And having said these words, he went into his chamber alone, and made brazen shells, and filled them with rain-water, and held in his hand a palm rod, and gazing into this, began, as hard as he could, to utter spells, and beheld how 4 the Egyptians were being smitten down at the onslaught of the Barbarians' ships.

He fleeth
unto
Ethiopia
and from
Ethiopia to
Macedonia
and is
there a
soothsayer.

Forthwith he changed his dress, and shaved his head and beard, and took gold as much as he might bear, and which might 8 be needful to him to busy himself with wizardry. And thus he fled from Egypt, near by Pelusium. And at length, coming into Ethiopia, he put on linen apparel, [and] in the guise of an Egyptian seer went into Macedonia. And there he sate 12 himself, and before all the Greeks, and in their sight was soothsaying. But the Egyptians, when they saw how Anectanabus was not at Court, went to Serapis, who was their greatest god, and besought him that he might give them answer as to 16 Anectanabus their king. And Serapis replied: 'Anectanabus, your king, is gone from Egypt because of Artaxerxes, the king of the Persians, who will subdue you unto his lordship. Nevertheless, when a short time hath flown by, he will come back 20 to shake off his thralldom, and will be avenged on your foes, and yoke them under you.' And as soon as they had got this answer, they made a kingly statue out of a black stone, in honour of Anectanabus. And they wrote on it, at his feet, this 24 saying, that it might be handed down for their offspring to think of. But Anectanabus remained in Macedonia, nor was he known.

The
Egyptians
learning
his absence
get an
oracle why
he is gone
and when
he shall
come back
again
victorious.
They make
of him a
black stone
image.

HOW ANECTANABUS WENT UP TO THE PALACE TO OLYMPIA THE QUEEN.

Philip,
king of
Macedon,
being gone
to battle,
Anectana-
bus meeting
Olympia
greeted her
and is
answered.

In the meantime, Philip, king of Macedonia, went out to 28 battle. But Anectanabus went forward to the palace, that he might behold Olympias the queen, and see how fair she was. And when he saw her, his heart was smitten with love of her, and stretching forth his hand, he greeted her, saying, 32 'Hail, Queen of Macedonia,' disdaining to call her 'lady'. And she, Olympias, answered him, speaking thus: 'Hail, master, come thou and sit near.' And when he sate thus, Olympias

asked many things of him. 'Art thou not an Egyptian?'
And Anectanabus answered: 'The word thou saidst was kingly,
when thou didst name the Egyptians. For the Egyptians are
4 wise, and read dreams, understand the birds of the air in their
flight, open up the hidden places, and tell the fate of those new-
born, babes. Of all these things, as a seer, I, too, have knowledge.'
And Olympia saw how he gazed upon her, and spoke, 'Master, of
8 what dost thou bethink thee, who thus lookest on me?' And
Anectanabus answered, 'I call to my mind many answers of the
gods. One answer had been that I was to look upon a queen.'
And saying this, he drew forth from his breast a cleansing
12 tablet of bronze and ivory, inwrought with gold and silver, and
on its face were three whirls. The first contained in itself the
Twelve Minds, and in the third, sun and moon were fashioned.
Next to them, was seen a chain of ivory, and from it he
16 pulled forth seven wonder-bright stars, that told the hours
and birth-dooms of men, and seven carven stones, and two
stones for the saving men whole.

And Olympia beheld these things, and said: 'Master, if
20 thou wouldst I should believe thee, tell me the year, the day
and hour of the king's birth.' And upon this, he said to the
queen, 'Wishest thou to hear nothing else from me?' Quoth the
queen, 'Tell me what shall fall out betwixt Philip and me, for
24 men say that, when Philip shall come from the war, he will
thrust me forth, and take another mate.' And Anectanabus
answered: 'They prate of many things untruly; but ere a long
time pass, it shall be as they say.' And the queen answered:
28 'I beg thee, master, unveil me all the truth.' Thereupon
Anectanabus:—'One of the mightiest gods shall share thy bed
and uphold thee through all thy thrivings and downfalls, even
if they be overstrong.' Olympia replied: 'I beseech thee, say
32 what shape this god shall put on?' Anectanabus replied:
'Neither young, nor old; his beard besprinkled with white
hairs. Wherefore, if this please thee, be ready for him, for
at night shalt thou see him, and in thy sleep shall he lie by
36 thee.' The queen said: 'If I behold this, neither as a seer, nor
as godly, but, as the god himself, will I worship' [thee]. And
at once Anectanabus said, 'Fare thee well, O queen.' After
this Anectanabus, leaving the palace, and walking straight forth

And the
queen
hearing
that he is an
Egyptian
asks him
of many
things.

He looks on
her, and
telling her
of an
oracle,
shows the
instruments
of
his sorcery.

Olympia
asks as to
the king's
birth; and
as to what
shall befall
her, for
men fore-
tell evil.

Anectanabus
gain-
says them
and fore-
tells that
she shall
be beloved
and have
the em-
braces of
a god in
man's
shape.

Leaving
her he digs
up herbs
that he
may so
delude her.

And
having
dreamt
Olympia
calls him
to her, he
tells her
how to
enable the
god to come
to her first
seeming as
a snake.

She gives
him a
chamber in
the palace.

He lieth by
the queen
seemingly
as a god
and sealeth
her womb,
saying the
child shall
not be up-
braided for
his birth.

Thus
was she
cheated ;
and was
with child.

But she, in
fear, asks
him how
to escape
Philip's
wrath.

Hecomforts
her and
through
wizardry
makes
King
Philip
dream a
god is
flying with
his wife
who, after,
seals her
womb,

to the city's camp in a desert spot, tore up herbs, and ground them, and took their juice, and wrought spells and other like things of the fiend, that in that same night Olympia might behold the god Hamon lying beside her, and saying to her 4 thereafter, 'Woman, thou hast conceived him who shall beshield thee.' And, on the morrow, Olympia awoke from her slumbers, and called Anectanabus to her, and told him of the dream she had beheld. Then Anectanabus said: 'If thou wilt give me 8 room in the palace, thou shalt see the god himself, face to face. For that god shall come to thee in the shape of a great snake, and soon after, taking on a manlike body, he shall seem to be in my likeness.' And to this Olympia said: 'As thou hast spoken, 12 master, do. Take to thyself a bed in the palace, and canst thou make good the truth thereof, I will deem thee to be the father of the boy.' And, about the first watch of the night, Anectanabus took on him, through spells and wizardry to be changed into 16 the shape of a great snake, and whistling on to the bedchamber of Olympia, to fly through. And he entered her room, and rose on to her bed, and with great love began to kiss her, and the kisses betokened to her who he was. And when he rose up 20 from the bed, he smote her on the womb, and spake: 'This begetting be thy avenging, and in no wise may it be upbraided of men.'

On such a fashion was Olympia cheated, who had lain with 24 a man as though he had been a god. And in the morning, Anectanabus went down from the palace, and the queen was with child.

And when she began to be big, she called unto her Anec- 28 tanabus, saying: 'Master, tell me, what doom will Philip wreak on me, when he shall come back?' And Anectanabus said to her, 'Be not afraid: god Hamon will champion thee.' And with these words he left the palace, and went outside the 32 town, to a barren spot. And, uprooting grasses, rubbed them, and grated them, and took their sap. And he caught a sea-bird, and began to sing over the herbs, and anoint the herbs with the sap. This he did in fellowship with the fiends, that he might 36 betray King Philip through a dream. And this was brought about. That same night the god Hamon appeared to Philip, in a dream, lying with his wife Olympia, and, the night ended, he

1 saw him touch her womb, and seal it with a golden ring. And on this ring there was a stone, and graven on this a lion's head, and the chariot of the sun, and a very sharp sword. And he
4 said to her: 'Woman, thou hast conceived thy saviour.' And Philip awoke from his sleep, and calling Arideus, made known to him the dream, and what he had seen. And Arideus said: 'Philip, not from man, but from a god, hath thy wife conceived.
8 In truth, the lion's head and the chariot of the sun and the sharp sword, foretold that he, who shall be born of her, shall journey to the East whence riseth the sun! And with the sharp sword shall he underyoke to himself the nations of the
12 whole world.'

telling her she has conceived hersaviour.

And awaking from the dream his seer reads him its meaning, and that the child shall be glorious.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A MIGHTY DRAGON
WENT TO THE FORE IN FRONT OF PHILIP AND OVERCAME
HIS ENEMIES IN THE FRAY.

In the meanwhile, King Philip fought and won. For there appeared in the battle a dragon, who went before him and laid low his foes. And when he came back to Macedonia, he met
16 and kissed Olympia. And King Philip gazed on her, and said, 'To whom, O Olympia, hast thou given thyself up. For sinned thou hast, yet not sinned, for as much as thou hast brooked frowardness from a god. But I have seen all that has
20 been done by a god on thee, in a dream: therefore be blameless in my eyes, and the eyes of all men!'

With the dragon's aid King Philip wins the fight, and coming back he speaks as in joke to his wife as to what has befallen her.

HOW ANECTANABUS IN THE SHAPE OF A DRAGON CAME
BEFORE PHILIP AT A FESTIVAL AND KISSED OLYMPIA.

On a certain day Philip was feasting with his lords and chieftains of Macedonia and with Olympia his wife. And
24 Anectanabus through wizardry took on himself the shape of a dragon, and, passing through the midst of the couch whereon they lay apart, whistled so loudly that all the revellers were stricken with fear, and the greatest dread, and coming near
28 Olympia, he put his head on her breast and kissed her. Philip, seeing this, spoke to Olympia, 'Woman, thee and all I tell; beheld this dragon, what time I laid my enemies low.'

At a feast Anectanabus comes to Olympia as a dragon and Philip tells the guests what has happened.

HOW A BIRD LAID AN EGG IN PHILIP'S BOSOM AT WHOSE
BREAKING THERE CAME FORTH A SERPENT, WHICH FORTH-
WITH DIED.

A bird lays
an egg
in King
Philip's
lap, which
breaking
gives forth
a snake,
which
before it
can go back
dies. His
sorcerer
reads him
its mean-
ing.

And a few days after this Philip the king was sitting in his palace, and there appeared unto him a little and most gentle bird, which flew into his bosom and laid an egg. And the egg, falling to the ground, was broken. And at once there crept 4 forth from it a very little snake. And it turned around, wishful to go into the egg, but, before it might put in its head, it was quenched. And Philip, seeing this, was heavily distressed, and called to him Arideus, and showed him the monstrous thing he 8 had seen. And Arideus said to him, 'King Philip, a son shall be born to thee, who shall reign after thy death, and shall fare forth over the whole world and sway all peoples, and ere he come back to the land of his birth, shall die by a most swift 12 death.'

The queen
is com-
forted by
wizardy
till the
child is
born.

And as the time of child-birth was drawing nigh, Olympia began to feel pain, and her womb was tormented, and she bade Arideus be called to her, and spoke with him: 'Master, my 16 womb is wrenched with very heavy labours.' Anectanabus [*sic in both editions* 1489 and 1494] then spake: 'Raise thyself awhile from thy throne, for in this hour the elements are troubled by the sun.' This was done, and the pain went from 20 her. And soon after, Anectanabus said to her, 'Sit down, O Queen!' and she sate herself and bore a child. And as soon as the boy was fallen on to the earth, a mighty thunderclap and thunderbolts, with tokens and lightnings came about through- 24 out the whole world. Then night was spread forth and lasted, it reaching unto the last hour of day. Then parts of the clouds fell down in Italy. And seeing these signs, Philip the king was affrighted, and went in to Olympia, and said: 'I deemed 28 that this little babe should in no wise be fostered. For he is not conceived of me, but of some god, for at his birth I beheld the heavens changed. Yet let him be fostered in my memory, as though he were my son, and follow in the stead of a son 32 I begot through another wife.' And when he said this, she handled the babe with great care. And the boy's face had the likeness neither of father nor mother. The hair on his head

Mighty
wonders
happen,
and Philip
is per-
suaded to
let the
child be
fostered
as though
he were his
own son.

was shaggy as a lion's. His eyes glistened like the stars, but each beamed with its own hue, one black, the other yellow. And his teeth were sharp, and his eager rush as a lion's. His shape foreshadowed his energy and forethought. By his parents he was called Alexander. In the schools, and wheresoever he sate, he strove with them in letters and disputations, and by his keen swiftness won the mastership. And when he was twelve years old, he was beweaponed for battle, and excelled in arms. And Philip, seeing how quick he was, praised him, and said: 'Son Alexander, I love thy speed, and wit of mind for its work. But I am sore and feel foolish that thy form is so unlike mine.'

And Olympia heard this, and was greatly afraid. And she called hither Anectanabus, and said: 'Master, learn from me what Philip misdeemeth. For he said to Alexander, "Son, I love thy speed and wit of mind. But, that thy shape is unlike mine, I am saddened."' And Anectanabus began to think, and said: 'His thought is nowise harmful.' And gazing aloft as he was wont, he looked on a certain star, and riddled out his wish. And when Alexander heard this, he spake: 'The star thou seest is seen in the heavens?' And Anectanabus replied: 'My son, it is.' Alexander said: 'Canst thou show it unto me?' Anectanabus answered: 'Follow me in the hour of night, and I will show it unto thee.' Alexander said: 'Thy fate is not known to thee, or uncertain?' Anectanabus replied: 'Enough of this.' Alexander said: 'I would fain know it.' Anectanabus answered: 'In truth know that from my son shall come my death.' This said, as he went down from the palace, Alexander followed him in the hour of the evening without the city. And when they arrived up on to the ditch of the city, Anectanabus spake: 'Son Alexander, gaze thou on the stars; look how the star of Hercules is perplexed, and how Mercury's star is blithe. If I see Jove sparkling, my doom telleth me of my coming death at the hands of my son.' At this sight Alexander came up nigh to him, and made an onslaught on him, making him fall

The child is like neither father nor mother; his eyes are starlike, one black one yellow, his teeth sharp. He is called Alexander.

In the schools and at arms he excels all. Philip tells him how he loved him yet was grieved at his birth. Olympia fearing tells this to Anectanabus, who says it is not harmful.

Anectanabus, being with Alexander, sees a star which when shown again, he announces to foretell his death at his son's hands. Alexander holding this a lie rushes against him.

[The early Text begins.]

36 downd in to þe dyke, and thare he felle, & was all to-frusched; and þa Alexander said vn-to hym one this wyse. 'Fals

Leaf 1.
Anectanabus falls

into the
dyke and
Alexander
tells him it
is right
punish-
ment.

Anectana-
bus tells
Alexander
that he is
his own
son.
Alexander
reproaches
his mother.

A Prince of
Macedonia
brings a
fierce horse
to the
palace
which the
king uses
to slay evil-
doers.

King Philip
has an
oracle of
his gods.

Alexander
taught the
seven
sciences by
Aristotle
and Calis-
thenes.

wreche,' quop he, 'that presume; to tell thynges pat ere to comē, re;te als þou were a prophete, and knewe þe preuate; of heuenē. Now may þou see that þou lye; And þare-fore þou arte worthy to hafe swilke a dede.' And thañ Anectanabus 4 ansuerd; & said: 'I wyste wele nyoghe,' quop he, 'pat I scholde die swylke a dede. Talde I no;te lange are to þe, that myñ awenē soñ schulde slae me?' 'Whi, ame I thi soñ?' þañ quop Alexandre: 'ʒaa, for sothe,' quop Anectanabus, 'I gat the.' 8 And wit þat word; he ʒalde þe gaste. And thañ Alexander hert tendird' oñ his Fader, And he take hym vp on his bakke, and bare hym to þe palace. And whenē his moder Olympias saw hym, Scho said' vn-till hym. 'Soñ,' quop scho, 'what 12 es that?' 'Als thi foly hase made it,' quop he, 'so it es.' And thañ he gert berye hym wirchipfully.

¹ In the mene tyme, a prynce of Macedoyne broghte þe ² kyng a horse vn-temed; a grete and a faire; & he was tyed oñ ilke 16 side wit chynes of Ireñ, for he walde wery meñ and ete þañ. This ilke horse was called' Buktiphalas³, bi-cause of his vgly luyngē, For he hade a heued' lyke a bufte, & knottitts in his frount, as þay had bene þe bygynnyng of hournes. And whenē 20 þe kyng saw þe bewtee of this horse, he said till his seruandis, 'Take; this horse and putte; hym in a stable, and makes barre; of yreñ be-fore hym, that thefe; and oper mysdoers, þat sañ be done to dede, may be putt in-till hym, to be slaeñ of hym. 24 And þay didd' soo. In þe mene tyme þe kyngē Philippe had' ane answe;re of his goddes, that hee schulde regne nexte after hym, the whilke myghte ryde that wylde horse wit-owtteñ harme. So it fette þat Alexander þe whilke was þañ twelue ʒere 28 alde, wexe strange & re;te hardy, & was wysse and discrete; for he was wele lered' & conmand' in all þe seuēñ sciences, þe whilke twa philosophirs had teched' hym: þat es to say, Arestotle & Calistene. And one a day, as Alexander passed' 32 for-by þe place þare als þe foresaide stode, he loked in be-twene þe barre; of yrne and saw, bifore þe horse, mens hend' and fete, & oper of paire membris, liggand' scatered' here & thare, and he had' grete wonder þare-off. And he putt in his 36

¹ Space for miniature blank, ten lines.

² a changed by scribe into þe.

³ Buktiphalas. In MS. a blot has

smudged out all the i except a dot, and obscured the p, making it look like *Bukts-phalas*, but it reads really as above.

hande bitwene þe barreȝ, And þe horse * strekede oute his nekke,
als ferre als he myghte, and likked Alexander hand; and he
knelid douñ oñ his kneesse, and bi-helde Alexander in þe vesage
4 langly. And Alexander vnderstode wele þe will of þe horse,
and opynd the barreȝ, and went into þe horse, and straked him
softely on þe bakke wīt his riȝte hand; And belyfe þe horse
wexe wonderly meke tiff Alexander; and riȝte as a honde will
8 couche when his maister biddes hym, so dide he tiff Alexander;
and Alexander lukede besides hym, & sawe a sadiȝt & a brydeȝ
hyng thare; and he tuke & dyd þaĩd oñ hyñ, & leppe one his
bakke; & rade furthe oñ hym. And when the kyng Philippe
12 sawe hym do so, he said vn-tiff hym 'Mi soñ Alexander' quop
he: 'All þe ansuers of our goddeȝ are fulfillede in the! For
when I ame dede, þou moñ regne after me' And Alexander
ansuerd, & said 'I pray the, Fader,' quop he, 'ordeyne me horse
16 & meñ, for I gaa seke dedeȝ of armeȝ.' 'For sothe' quop þe
kyng wīt a glade chere, 'Take þe a hundreth horse, and
xl thosandeȝ pounde of golde; and take wīt the of þe worthieste
knyghteȝ þat langeȝ to me, and wendis furthe.' And he didd so.
20 And he tuke wīt hym also a philosophre þat highte Eu-
festius, whilke he traysted mekiff in, And twelue childre þat
he chese to be his playfers, and went hym furthe, and come
in-tiff a contreth þat es called Polipone. And when the
24 kyng of þe land herd teff, þat swilke meñ ware entred in-to
his rewme in swilke araye, he raysed a gret Oste, and come
agaynes Alexander for to feghte wīt hyñ. And when he
come nerehand hym, he said vn-tiff hym. 'Teff me' quop he
28 'whatt þou ert?' And Alexander ansuerd 'I am Alexander'
quop he 'þe soñ of Philippe, þe kyng of Macedoyne.' 'And
what hopeȝ þou þat I be?' quop þe kyng tiff hym. And
Alexander ansuerd. 'þou ert kyng of Arridouns' quop he.
32 'Neuer-þe-lesse, if all I do þe þat wirchippe þat I calle þe
kyng, empride þe nathynge þare-of. For meñ seeȝ ofte tymes
meñ þat ere in heghe astate com to lawe degree, & meñ þat
ere in lawe degree, come tiff heghe astate.' 'þou sais riȝte
36 wele' quop þe kyng. 'Take hede to thyñ aweñ selfe!' And
Alexander ansuerd & said 'Ga hethen away fra me' quop he
'for þou cañ say noghte to mee, ne I hafe noghte at do wīt þe.'
And þaĩd þe kyng was worder wrathe, And said tiff Alexander

* Leaf 1 bk.
Alexander
sees Buce-
phalus.
Bucephalus
bows and
submits to
him.

Philip sees
Alexander
riding
Bucephalus
and says
the oracles
are ful-
filled.

Philip at
Alexander's
asking
gives him
arms and
men to
invade
foreign
territory.

Alexander's
encounter
with the
King of the
Arridons.

They quar-
rel fiercely.

* Leaf. a

The king challenges Alexander. Alexander accepts, and they both go home to gather forces.

'Luke on me' * *quof* he 'pat spekes to the: Fore I swere the be my Fader hele, & I anes spitte in thi face, þou schale dye.' And wit þat he spitte at Alexander, & said: 'Take þe þare, þou biche whelpe, þat þe semez till hafe.' And Alexander 4 stepped furthe, & said vn-till hym. 'For þou' *quof* he 'hase dispised me, by-cause I ame littill; I swere þe, bi þe pete of my Fader, & by my moders wambe, in þe whilke I was consayued of godd Amoð, þat þou schalt see mee, are oughte lange, in 8 þi rewme, redi to feghte wit þe; and owþer I schalt wynd thi rewme wit dynte of swerd; & brynge it vnder my subieccion, or þou schalt make me subiecte vn-to þe.' And þare þay assignede day of Batelle; and ayther of þam went hame fra 12 oþer.

Alexander gathers his army, meets King Nicholas and slays him after the fight.

¹And agaynes þe day of Batelle, Alexander, bi ascent & ordynance of kyng Philippe, gadird a grete Oste, & went to the place þare þe Batelle was assigned, and fand aif redy þare, 16 kyng Nichol and his oste. And þay trumped vp appon bathe þe parties, and bigað to feghte, & many meñ ware slaen on bathe þe sydez. Bot at þe laste, Alexander hade þe felde, & tuke kyng Nichol, & gart smytte of his heued, & went in-till 20 his land, and conquered it; and his knyghtes went and coround hym kyng þare-off. And sythen he went hame till his fader, kyng Philippe, and fand hym sittand at the mete at a bridale: For he had put awaye fra hym his wyfe Olympias, Alexander 24 moder, and taken hym an-oþer þat highte Cleopatra; And Alexander went in-to þe hauße, and said vn-to þe kyng Philipp: 'Fader,' *quof* he, 'I pray 3ow, þat for a rewarde of my firste iournee þat I hafe now made, 3ee graunte me to take 28 my Moder Olympias agayne vn-to 3ow, & do to hir as awe to be done to a qwenne², rathere þan I gyffe hir to anoþer kyng; so þat I be nozte 3oure enemy for euer. For this weddyng, þat 3e hafe now made here, es vnlefull!' When 32 he hadd said thir wordes, ane of þe þat satt at þe kynges burde, whase name was Lesias, ansuerd & said to þe kyng: 'lord' *quof* he 'þou schall hafe a soñ of Cleopatra, and he schalt regne after þe!' Alexander, than, was gretly grenede at his 36 wordes, and wit a wardrere þat he hade in his hande, he went

On his home-coming, he finds his father at bridal with a new wife, and begs him to take Olympia back again,

lest Alexander, giving her to another king, be his foe. One Lesias jeeringly foretelling that Cleopatra shall bear Phillip an heir;

¹ Place for miniature blank, twelve half-lines.

² MS. *qwenne* with *e* inserted above text.

till hym and kellede¹ hym. When kyng Philippe sawe this, he was gretly stirred; and rase vp, & gatt a swerde * & ranne to-wardez Alexander, for to hafe smytten hym. Bot onane
 4 he felle down; and ay þe nerre Alexander þat he drewe, þe mare he felle to the erthe rizte as he bene ferd. And þan Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Philippe' quop he 'how es it soo, that þou, þat hase wonn wit dynt of swerde alle Grece,
 8 ne hase now na strenghe to stande on thi fete.' And þan all þe hauße was troubled, and the brydale letted. And Alexander went abowte þe hauße, and keste douñ þe bourdez wit þe mete, & þe drynke þat ware appon þan, and tuke
 12 Cleopatra, and schotte² hir oute at þe hauße dore. And the kyng Philippe, for sorowe þat he tuke till, felle grefe seke. And a littill afterwardez, Alexander went till hym for to vesett hym & comforthe hym, and said vn-till hym 'Philippe,'
 16 quop he, 'if all it be nozte semely, þat I calle þe be þi propre name; neuere-þe-lesse, nozte as þi soñ, bot as þi gud' frend, I sail telle the myñ avice. It es fully my consaile þat þou reconnselle agayne vn-to the my lady,
 20 my Moder Olympias, and at þou grefe þe na-thynge at þe dede of Lesias, ne take na heuynes to the þare-fore. For vn-kyndely me thynke þat þou didd, and vngudely, þat þou drewe þi swerde for to smytte me þare-wit.' And when Philippe
 24 herd þir wordes, his hert tendird, & he bigane to wepe. And þan Alexander went till his Moder Olympias, and said vn-till hir: 'Be nozte ferde' quop he 'ne be nozte heuy to my fader, for if alle thi trespas be preuce, & nozte knawen, neuer-þe-lesse
 28 þou erte in party to blame.' And when he hade sayde thus, he ledd hir furthe to þe kyng Philippe. And he tuk & kyssid hir, and thus was scho reconnselde vn-till hym agayne.

³After þis, þare come messengers Fra Darius, þe emperour
 32 of Perse, to kyng Philippe, and asked hym tribute And Alexander answerd to thir messengers, & saide, 'Saise to Darius, þour lorde,' quop he, 'þat señ þe tyme þat Philippe soñ was waxen of age þe hen þat ay es waxen barayne & consumed

Alexander slays him.
 * Leaf 2 bk.

King Philip having in vain sought to kill Alexander, Alexander upsets the feast and casts out Cleopatra.

King Philip having fallen sick, Alexander goes to be reconciled with him.

Philip weeps and Alexander brings him and Olympia together again.

Messengers come from Darius the Emperor of Persia, to whom Alexander refuses the

¹ The first vowel is either a *y* changed into *e*, or an *e* changed into *y*. Hence it is uncertain if *kyllede* or *kellede* was written first. I think *kyllede* was first written and changed to *kellede* from the link with

next letter.

² MS. seems certainly when magnified to write *o*, *schotte*, although it is blotted.

³ Space left for miniature, eleven half lines.

wonted tribute.

awaye, and so es Darius pryuede of his trybute.' And [when] thir messengers herd thir wordes; pay hade grete wounder of pam & of pe witt & pe wisdom of Alexander.

Armenia rises, Alexander subjugates it.

* Leaf 3.

In pe mene tyme tythynges come to kyng Philippe, þat Ermony, 4
pe whilke bi-fore was suget vn-till hym, was rebelle & raysse agaynes hym. And he garte *semble a grete Oste, and sent Alexander thedir þare wit to feghte wit þam, and to putt þam agayne vnder his subieccion. Alexander than went wit this Oste 8
till Ermony & broghte it agayne in subieccion, as it was bi-fore.

Pansamy, a lord, covets Philip's wife and kingdom; he revolts and wounds king Phillip to the death.

An in pe mene tyme, whils he was þare, a lorde of Macedoyne pe whilke highte Pansamy, a strange man & a balde, suget vn-to Philippe, and hade of lange tyme couette for to hafe pe quene 12
Olympias, conspirede agaynes pe kyng, and come with a grete multytude of folke appon pe kyng, to for-do hym. And when tythynges here of come to kyng Philippe, he went to mete hym in pe felde wit a fewe menzee. And when he sawe pe grete multi- 16
tude þat Pansamy hade wit hym, he turned & fled, and Pansamy persued after hym, and ouerhied hym, and strake hym thurghe wit a spere, and zitt ife all he were grenosely wonded, he dyed nozte alson, bot he laye halfe dede in the waye. And than 20
pe Macedoynes, þat wenede he hade bene dede, made mekiff sorowe. And when pis iournee was done Pansamy was gretly empridede þare offe, & went in to pe kynges palace for to take pe qwene Olympias oute of it and hafe hir with hym. 24
And euen pe same tyme, Alexander come fra Hermony, & sawe¹ swylke trouble & styrrynge in the rewme, and hyed hym faste towarde pe kynges palace, and when Olympias herd telle þat Alexander hir soñ had pe victorie of his enemys, 28
& was comande nere, Scho went furthe of pe palace at a preuee posterne to mete hir soñ, and to welcome hym hame. And alson als scho come nere hym, scho criede appon hym & said.

Alexander comes back in the midst of the troubles and his mother goes to meet him.

'A A, my son Alexander, whare es pe grace & pe fortune 32
þatoure goddes highte the, þat es to say, þat þou scholde alwaye ouercome thynð enemys & nozte be ouercomen, þat Pansamy hase one þis wyse slaen thi Fader.' And alson the worde come to Pansamy þat Alexander was comen, and he 36
went furthe of palace for to mete hym. And also faste als Alexander sawe hym, he oute wit a swerd and clafe his heued

Pansamy goes forth to meet Alexander, but Alexander slays him.

¹ MS. blotted at sawe.

in to þe tethe, & slewe hym. And ane of þe Oste said till Alexander: 'Philippe þi fader' quop he, 'lyes dede in þe felde.' And þan Alexander went thedir thare he laye, and saw hym euen at þe dyinge. And þan he began faste for to wepe. And Philippe loked apou hym, & said. 'A A, my dere son Alexander,' quop he, 'wit a glade hert [I] may now dye, for þat þou so soune hase venged my dede,' & euen wit * þat worde he 3alde þe gaste. And Alexander wirchipfully gert hym be entered.

¹ When kyng Philippe was entered, Alexander went and sett hym in his trone, and gerte calle by-fore hym alle þe folke þat was gaderd thedir, lordes & oper, and said vn-to þan on þis wyse. 'Meñ,' quop he, 'of Macedoyne of Tracy, and of Grece byhaldez þe feigure of Alexander and puttez oute of 3our hertes drede of alle 3our enemys. For sekerly, and 3e wiff take gude hertis to 3ow, thurgh þe helpe of oure goddis he schaff hafe þe ouerhande of all 3oure neghtebours, and 3our name schaff spred ouer alle the werlde. And þare-fore ilkane of 3ow þat hase Armour, makes it redy, and he þat hase nane come to my palace & I sall gerre delyuer hym all þat hym nedis, and ilk a mañ make hym redy to þe werre.' And when þe lordes and knyghtis þat ware of grete age, herd thir wordes þay ansuerd Alexander, & said vn-till hym: 'lorde,' quop thaye, 'we hafe seruede 3oure fader a longe tyme & traueled wit hym in his werres, & þare-fore we ere now so bryssed in armes þat þare [es] no myghte lefte in vs for to suffre disesse þat often tymes falles to meñ of werre. For we ere streken in grete age. And þare-fore, if it be plesynge vn-to 3ow, we consaile 3ow & we beseken 3owe, that 3e chese 3ow 3ong lordes & 3ong knyghtes, þat ere listy meñ & able for to suffre disesse for to be wit 3ow. For here we giffe vp att armes if it be 3our wiff & forsakes þan for euer.' And þan Alexander answerd & said: 'I wiff rathere,' quop he, 'chese þe sadnesse of an alde wyse mañ than þe vnavesy lightnesse of 3onge meñ. For 3ong meñ often tymes traystand to mekill in thaire awenñ doghtynes thurgh þaire awenñ foly ere mescheued. Bot alde meñ wirkes all by consaile & by witte.' When he had said thir wordes all meñ

Alexander is told of his father's dying state. He goes to him and hears his last words.

Philip dies.

* Leaf 3 bk.

After Philip's burial, Alexander calls his folk together and harangues them.

He foretells to them their rule over the world, and bids them get ready their weapons for war.

But those of great age beg leave that they should not be made to go on new wars, but rather the younger men.

Old men work with wisdom, young men with boldness and rashness.

They allow
and con-
sent to his
words.

allowed his hie witte and hally þay assentede to hym for to do his lyste.

* Leaf 4.
Gathering
an army,
Alexander
ships to
Italy, first
taking
Chalcedo-
nia.

He takes
tribute of
the Ro-
mans and
of all
Europe as
far as the
West
Ocean.

¹ Sone after Alexander assemblede a grete Oste, & went bi Schippe to-warde; Ytaly, and als he come by Calcedoyne, he 4
assaylled it rehte strangly, and þe folke of Calcedoyne * went
to þe walles of þe Citee and defendid manly. Bot at the laste
Alexander wañ the Citee, and fra thethyñ he Schippede
in-tiff Italy. And alsone als þe Romaynes herd of his comynge ⁸
þay were wonder ferde for hym, and the grete lordes of þe
lande tuke fourty thowsande; of besande; and 1^o corounes of
golde, and went vn-tiff hym, and presant hym wit þañ &
bysoughte hym þat he scholde nozte werrey appoñ þañ, ne ¹²
do þañ na harme. And than Alexander tuke trybute of þe
Romaynes, and of alle the folkes þat duelt bitwixe that & þe
weste Ooceane, þe whilke regione es callede Europe, & lefte
þañ in gude pesse. 16

Thence
sailing to
Africa he
subjugates
it.

The adven-
ture with
the hart.

He sacri-
fices to
Amon,
praying
the oracle.

He goes to
Taphoresey
and sacri-
fices to his
gods.

The Vision
of Serapis.

² Fra thethyn he Schippede in-tiff Affrice, in thee whilke
he fande bot fewe þat rebelled agaynes hym and þarefore
als [men] swa saye, eueñ sodeynly he conquerid it & broghte it
vnder his subieccioñ. And fra Affric he went by Schippe tiff ane ²⁰
Ile, þat es called Frontides, for to consaile wit a godd þat þay
called Amon. And as Alexander & his meñ went to-warde;
þe temple of þis for-said godd, þay mett in þe waye a grete
hert þe whilke Alexander bad his meñ sla wit arowes. And ²⁴
þay schott at hym; bot nane of þañ myghte hitt hym.
And þañ Alexander tuke a bowe & schotte at hym & hitt
hym & slewe hym. And þañ Alexander went in-to þe temple,
& made sacrafyce of þis hert vn-to godd Amon, and by-soughte ²⁸
hym þat he schulde gyffe hym ansuares. When Alexander hade
made his prayers þare to godd Amon, he went wit his Oste
in-tiff a place þat highte Taphoresey, In þe whilke were feftene ³
gude townnes, & þay hade twelue grete reuers þat rane in-to ³²
þe see, and at þe entree of þañ in-to þe see þare was drawen
ouer grete chynes of yryne, and thare Alexandir made Sacrifice
tiff his godde; And on þe same nyghte, a godd þat [hight]
Serapis apperid vn-tiff hym in his slepe, cledd in riche ³⁶
clothynge in ane horrible forme & a dredefull, and said vn-tiff

¹ Three lines miniature S.

² Five lines miniature F.

³ MS. has xv crossed through before
feftene.

hym. 'Alexander,' quop he, 'may þou take pis montayne on þi schulder & bere it a-way?' Quop Alexander, 'how myghte any mañ do þat?' And Serapis ansuerd & said, 'righte as pis
 4 montayne saff neuer wit-owten *end be removed' hethen, so thi name & thi dedes schaff be made mynde of to the worldes end.' And than Alexander prayed hym þat he walde prophycye hym what kyns dede he scholde die. Serapis ansuerd and said, 'It
 8 es noghte spedfull till a man to knawe his paynefull endyng. For if he knewe it, peraventure, he scholde neuer hafe Loye in his hert. Neuer þe lesse bi-cause þou hase prayede me to telle þe, I saff say the. After a drynke þou schaff take thi dede.
 12 For in thi 3outh þou saff make thyñ endyng. Bot spirre me noþer þe tyme ne þe houre when it schal be, For I wiff on na wyse telle it to the. For-whi goddez of þe este partiez of þe werlde saff telle the alle thi werdez.' When Alexander
 16 wakkened of his dreame, he was reghte heuy, and sent þe maste substance of his Oste to þe Cite of Askalon and bad þañ habide hym thare, and hym selfe & a certane of menze wit hym habade & thare he garte make a Citee & called it Alexander
 20 after his awenñ name.

¹In the mene tyme þe Egipcysen herd of þe comynges of Alexander, & þay went agaynes hym & submytt þañ vn-till hym & resayffed hym wirchipfully. And when Alexander come
 24 in-till Egipte, he fand ane ymage of a kyng made of blake stane curiously coruen, and he askede þe Egipcien whase ymage it was, and þay ansuerd & said, 'It es þe ymage,' quop þay, 'of Anectanabus that was kynge of Egipte nozte lange sythen
 28 gane, þe wyseste & þe worthiest þat euer was þare-in.' For sothe quop² Alexander, 'Anectanabus was my Fader.' And þan he knelid douñ with grete reuerence & kyssed þe ymage. Fra thethyñ he went wit his Oste to Surry. But þe
 32 Surriens agayne-stude³ hym and faghte wit hym and slewe many of his knyghtes. Neuer þe lesse Alexander had þe victorye. And þañ he went to Damaske, & Ensegged it & wanne it, and fra thethyñ he went to Sydon & wan it.
 36 And þañ he went vnto þe Citee of Tyre and layde Ensegge abowte it, and [in] pis Ensegge he laye many a day. And thare

* Leaf 4 bk.

Serapis foretells him his lasting fame, his deeds, his death. But of some things Serapis may not speak.

Alexander awakens saddened. He sends his main strength on to Askal. Where he was he founded the city of Alexandria.

The Egyptians hearing of his coming submit. He sees the image of Anectanabus.

He acknowledges Anectanabus as his father.

He invades Syria, takes Damascus, Sidon, and sets about the siege of Tyre.

¹ Five half lines space for miniature I.

² quop Alexander in miniature.

³ Scribe wrote *agaynesande* and altered it to *agaynestude*.

Tyre resists stoutly, and he has to set a boom across the haven.

* Leaf 5.

Alexander sends for help to Jadius, Bishop of the Jews, and also demands tribute.

The Bishop pleads the oath of fealty sworn to Darius.

Alexander swears to wreak vengeance on the Jews.

He sends Melagere with 500 men to Josaphat forage. They defeat the Lord of the country and slay him.

But the Lord of the city sends help and

his Oste suffred many dysessez. For þat Cite was so strange in it-selfe by-cause of þe ground; þat it was sett apou, and by-cause of grete towres & many þat ware abowte it, and also bicause it was so enclosed wit the see þat it myghte noghte 4 lightly * be wonneñ by nane assawte. Alexander þaũ vmbithoghte hym, one what wyse he myghte best com to for to destroy þis citee, and he gerte make a grete bastell of tree, and sett it apou schippes in þe see euẽ forgaynes þe cete, so þat 8 þare myghte no shippez come nere the hauẽ for to vetaille þe Citee or suppoẽ it wit meñ by-cause of þe bastelle. In þe mene tyme Alexander Oste hade grete defawte of vetayflis, and þaũ he sent lettres vnto Iadius, þat at that tyme was 12 bischoppe & gouernoure of þe Iewes, and prayede hym for to suppoẽ hym wit soũ meñ, and also þat he walde send sum vetails for hym & his Oste, and he scholde pay for þaũ wit a glade chere, and þat he scholde also send hym the tribute 16 þat he scholde gyffe Darius þe emperour of Perse. For hym ware better, he said, hafe his frenchippe þaũ þe frenchipe of Darius. The Bischope þaũ of þe Iewes ansuerd þe messangers þat broghte hym þe lettres & said, 'I hafe,' quop he, 'made 20 athe to Darius, þat, whils he leffez, I schaff neuer bere armes agaynes hym, and þarefore I ne may nozte do agaynes myñ Athe.' The Messagers þaũ went till Alexander & talde hym þe bischopes ansuere, and he was greued & said, 'I make myñ 24 avowe,' quop he, 'vntill oure goddes, þat I schaff take swilke vengeance on þe Iewes þat I saff make þaũ to knawe, whethir it es better to þaũ to be obeisant vn-to [my?] commandement, or vn-to þe kynges of Perse.' And he callede a duke, þat highte 28 Melagere, and wit v̄c meñ of armes, and badd þaũ gaa in to þe vale of Iosaphat, þe whilke was full of bestez & brynge of these bestez to þe Oste for to vetaille þaũ wit. And ane Sampson, þat knewe þe cuntre wele was paire gyde. Þay went in to þe 32 vale, and gadird to gedir catell wit-owte nombir & be-gaũ for to dryfe ou þaũ. And he þat was lorde of þe cuntre, Theosellas bi name, raysed a grete multitude of folke and mett þaũ & faughte wit þaũ & slewe many of þaũ. Bot Melagere & his 36 felaws at þat tym had þe better. And ane þat highte Caulus went baldly to Theosellas, & smate of his heued. All this was done bot a littiff fra þe citee of Gadir. And þaũ Bertyne,

lorde of þe citee, seand' this, was gretely stirrede and ischewede
 owte of þe citee & wit xxx fehtyng men and sett vp a schowte
 apou the * Macedoynes alle at anes, that alle þe erthe trembled
 4 wit-alle. And' when þe Macedoynes saw that grete multytude
 of folke com apou þam, þay were rehte ferde. And þan
 Melagere walde hafe sent a Messangere to þaire lorde Alexander,
 for to come & socoure þam, bot he mygte fynd' na mañ þat
 8 walde vndertake þe Message. Than thir twa batalles met
 Samed' & faughte to-gedir, and thare was Sampson slaen,
 and Bertyne. And þe Macedoynes wit þe grete multitude of
 þaire enemys ware dreuen abakke, and lyke for to be dreuen
 12 abakke & discomfites. And ane of þe grekkes, þat highte
 Arttes, seyng þe meschefe þay stode In, wanð hym owte of the
 Bataile & went in alle þe haste, þat he myghte, tiñ Alexander
 & talde hym þat þe Grekkes & þe Macedoynes ware in poynte
 16 to be mescheuede, bot if he suppoelde þam þe tittere. And
 than Alexander lefte þe segge of Tyre, and went wit his
 Oste to þe vale of Iosaphat, and fand' his men rihte harde
 by-stadde wit þaire enemys. And he and his Oste vmblyapped
 20 alle þaire enemys, and daunge þam douñ & slewe þam ilke
 a moder soñ. And when he had so done he turned' agayne
 vn-to Tyre, and fande the Bastelle, þat he hade made in þe See,
 dongen doune to þe grounde. For alsoñ als Alexandere was
 24 gane fra Tire to þe vale of Iosaphat, Balañ þat was lorde of
 Tyre ischewid' oute of þe citee wit thee folke þare-of, & assailed
 the bastell manfully, and tuk it & dange it doune. And when
 Alexander sawe that, he was gretly angerde, and his hert
 28 wonder heuy, and so ware alle þe Macedoynes and the Grekes.
 In so mekiñ they ware nerehand' in dispeire for to wyñ þe
 citee, and ware in poynte to hafe rissen¹ up þe segge. And
 one þe nyghte nexte suande, Alexander, als he laye & slept,
 32 dreymd' þat he hadd' in his hand' a grape, þe whilke hym
 thoghte he keste doune vnder his fete, and trade þare-one,
 & alsone þare rañ oute of it a grete dele of wyne. And when
 Alexander wakned, he called' tiñ hym a Philosophre & talde
 36 hym his dreme. And þe Philosophre ansuerde, 'be balde,'
 quop he, ' & lefe nozte to ensegge Tyre, for þe grape þat þou

the Macedonians are driven back.

* Leaf 5 bk.

One of the Greeks sends for help to Alexander, who, leaving the siege of Tyre, out-flanks the enemy of Josaphat and slays them all.

Alexander, returning to Tyre, finds his boom thrown down, for Balan had sortied with all his people. So despairing are the Greeks that they almost give up the siege.

The next night Alexander dreams a dream and, when his

¹ MS. rissen, perhaps for *zissen*, but the same idiom is found elsewhere.

Philosopher interprets it, he is cheered.

helde in thi hand, and keste vnder thi fete, and trade *pare-one*, es þe Citee of Tyre, þe whilk þou salþ wynn̄ thurgh strenth and trede it with thi fote, and *pare-fore* be na-thinge abaiste.' When Alexander herd' thire wordes, he was gretly comforthed, 4 and vmbithoghte hym̄ one whate wyse he myghte gette this Citee.

* Leaf 6.

He makes another boom on ships higher than the highest city tower. He directs his men how to attack.

And thañ he * garte make anoper bastelle in þe see, grettere, & hyere, and strangere þan þe toper was. For it was hierē 8 þañ þe hegheste towre of þe citee. And þis bastelle was tyede wit a hundrethe ankers. Þañ Alexander gert armede hym̄¹ suerely & wele, & wente by hym̄ ane vp apouñ this bastelle, and badd' all his meñ þat þay schulde make þañ redy for to feghte 12 & to giffe assawte to þe citee. And alsone als þay sawe hym̄ entire in to þe citee, þay scholde aff at anes presse to þe walles, and scale þañ, and clymbe ouer þe walles baldely & wyñ þe citee. And when̄ all meñ wereñ redy, hee gerte smyte 16 sounderē þe cabills þat þe bastelle was tyed' wit, & þe wawes of þe see bare it to þe walles of þe Citee. And Alexander delyuerlye stert apouñ [þe] walles, whare Balañ stode, and rañ apouñ hym̄ & slew hym̄ and keste hym̄ ouer þe walles in-to 20 þe dyke of þe citee. And when̄ þe Macedoyns & þe Grekes sawe Alexander entir in-to þe citee, þay schouffed' to þe walles aff at anes, and clambe ouer, sum̄ wit leddirs sum̄ on oper wyse wit-owtten̄ any resistence. For þe Tyreyenes was so ferde by- 24 cause of þe dedde of Balañ paire duc þat þay ne durste noghte turne agayne ne defende þe wallez. And ouñ this wyse was þe citee taken̄ and doungeñ doune to þe erthe.

Cutting the cables he lets the towers over the boom float in upon the city. He, climbing the walls, slays Balan, and his followers rush all at once into the city. Tyre is destroyed.

Fra þe segge of Tyre Alexander & his meñ went to þe citee 28 of Gaza and assailed it, & wit schorte while þay wañ it. And Fra thethyñ hyed' hym̄ towardz Ierusalem for to ensegge it.

Alexander takes Gaza and marches on Jerusalem.

The Bishop of the Jews, hearing this, calls the Jews before him, and orders fasting, prayer, and sacrifice.

An Angel

² Qwhen̄ þe Bischoffe of þe Iewes herde tesse þat Alexander was commaund toward' Ierusalem, he gert call bifore hym̄ aff 32 þe iewes þat ware in þe citee, and talde þañ þe tythynges þat ware talde hym̄. And sythen̄ he commandid' þañ þat þay schuld' com̄ to þe temple, and be þare in praynge Fastynges and wakynges & in sacrafice makyng vn-to godd', bisekand hym̄ 36 of helpe & socoure. And þay did' soo. And on þe nyghte nexte

¹ The *y* of *hyñ* for *hym̄* is written over another letter scratched out.

² Twelve half lines space with miniature of a Q.

after, when þe Bischope hadd' made his sacrafice, and was
 lyand' in prayers, he fell on slomeryng and ane Angelle appered'
 vn-till hym, and sayd', 'Be nozte ferd', quop he, 'bot swythe
 4 gere araye honestly all þe stretis of (þe) citee, and caste open
 the gates, and warne all þe folke þat þay aray þam̄ in whitte
 clethyng, and thi-selfe & alle þe prestis reuestez; 3ow solempnely,
 and to-morne arely wende; furthe of þe citee agaynes Alexander
 8 in processioūn. For hym by-houez; * regne & be lorde of alle
 þe werlde. Bot at þe laste þe wrethe of godd' sail falle apōn
 hym.' Whēn þe bischope wakened' of his slepe, he called' till
 hym þe iewes and talde þam̄ his reuelaciōn, and bad þam̄ do
 12 all als þe Angelle hade schewed' hym̄. And þay did' so. For
 þay arayed' þe stretez; of þe cetee and cledde þam̄ in whitte
 clethyng, and the bischope & þe prestis reueste þam̄, and
 bathe thay and alle þe folke went furthe of þe citee till a place
 16 whare þe temple & all þe citee may be seen̄. And þare þay
 habade þe comynge of Alexander. And whēn Alexander come
 nere þis foresaid place, and sawe be-for hym̄ swilke a multitude
 of folke, cledd' alle in whitte, and þe prestez; arayed' solempnely
 20 in riche vestymentis, and þe byschope also in his pontyfycals
 and a mytir one his heued', and þare-apōn a plate of golde,
 whare-one was wretyn þe name of grete godd' Tetragramaton, he
 commaunded all his men̄ þat þay schulde halde þam̄ by-hynd'
 24 hym, and habyde till he com̄ to þam̄. And he lighte off his
 horse, and went bi hym ane to þe iewes, And knelid' down̄ to
 þe erthe and wirchippede þe hye name of godd', þat he saw
 þare wretyn̄ apōn þe bischopes heued'. And þam̄ alle þe iewes
 28 knelid' doūn & saluste Alexander and cried all wit a voyce:
 'lyff lyffe,' quop þay, 'grete Alexander, lyffe, lyffe the gretteste
 Emperour of þe werlde, lyffe he þat sail ouer-com̄ all men̄ and
 nozte be ouercomen̄. Prynce maste gloryous and maste worthy
 32 of all þe princez; þat regnez; apōn erthe.' Whēn þe kynges; of
 Surry saw þis, þay hadd' grete wonder þare-off. And a prynce
 of Alexanders, þat highte Parmenōn, said' vn-till Alexander:
 'Mi lorde þe Emperour,' quop he, 'we mervelle vs gretely þat
 36 þou, wham̄ all men̄ wirchippez; and lowtez; wirchippez; here þe
 bischope of þe Iewes.' And Alexander ansuered', 'I wirchipe
 nozte hym,' þis quop he, 'Bot Godd', whase state he presentez;
 For whēn I was in Macedoyne, and vmbithoghte me, on̄ what

of the Lord
 appears by
 night to
 the High
 Priest and
 shows him
 how the
 city may
 be freed—
 and utters
 a prophecy.

* Leaf 6 bk.

The Bishop
 awakens,
 and, doing
 as the
 Angel bids,
 he and his
 people go
 forth to
 meet Alex-
 ander, the
 folk in
 white, the
 Bishop in
 full Ponti-
 ficals.

Alexander,
 seeing
 them, dis-
 mounting,
 kneels and
 worships
 the Name
 of God.

Alexander,
 being
 asked, tells
 them that
 he wor-

ships not the High Priest but God, and this because of a vision promising him the conquest of Darius.

He goes into Solomon's Temple and sacrifices. The Bishop shows him the prophecy of Daniel.

* Leaf 7.

The Bishop of the Jews asks that the laws of their fathers might be granted.

Alexander conquers the rest of Judaea.

Darius asks the fugitive Syrians as to what kind of man Alexander was. They show him a parchment

wyse I myzte conquere Assye, I saw hym slepand; in swilk habite & in swylke araye; and he lete as he sett noȝte by me, bot went baldely furthe bi me. And for I see nane¹ in swilke arraye bot hym, I suppose it be he þat I saw in my slepe. 4 And þare-fore I trowe þat thurgh þe helpe of Godd I saff ouercom̄ Daryus, þe kyng of Perse, and his grete pryde fordo. And all thynge; þat I caste in my hert fo[r] to do, it es my full triste þat thurgh his helpe I saff fulfilf it, and wele bryng 8 it to end. And þis es þe cause I wirchipped hym.' And when he hadd' said' thies wordes; he went in-to þe citee wit the bischope & þe preste; and went in-to þe temple þat Salamoñ made. And as þe bischope teched' hym he offred' 12 sacrafice vn-to Godd. And þe bischope tuke Alexander in hande a buke of þe prophicye of Daniel*, in þe whilke he fandē wretyn, þat a mañ of Grece sulde distruy þe powere of Perse². And Alexander was reghte gladde, supposynge þat 16 it was hym-selfe. And þañ he gaffe þe bischope & þe oper preste; grete gyfte; & riche & precyous, And badd' þe bischope ashe of hym what so he walde. And the bischope askede þat he walde giffe þañ leue to vse þe same lawes þat þaire 20 faderes vsed' bifore þañ, and he graunted' it. And þañ þe bischope askede þat³ walde giffe þe Iewes þat ware in Medee & in Babyloyn, leue for to vse þaire lawes, & he graunted' hym þat & all oper thynge; þat he walde aske. 24

* Alexander than went fra Ierusalem, & lefte thare Andromac his Messagere, and hym selfe & his Oste went to þe oper cite; þat ware in þe lande of Iudee, and at ilke a citee þat he come to, he was wirchippfully ressayued. In þe mene tyme þe 28 Surryens þat fledd' fra Alexander, went to Perse, and talde þe emperour Darius how Alexander hadd' done to þañ. And Darius spirred' thaym of his stature & of his schappe, and þay schewed' hym purtrayed' in a parchemyñ skynñ þe ymage of 32 Alexander. And alsone als Darius sawe it, he dispysed' Alexander bycause of his littiñ stature, and be-lyfe he gerte

¹ MS. *see nane* twice over: 'see nane, see nane.'

² A more open handwriting begins most clearly after *Perse*.

³ Supply *he* between *þat* and *walde*.

⁴ Eleven half lines space for a minia-

ture which is lacking. A square is roughly drawn out, and in the square the words '*hic incipit*' scribbled. Beside the miniature in the margin is written '*rex equitans*.'

write a *lettre* and sent it till Alexander. And *pare-wit* he sent hym a handball & *oper certane lapez* in scorne. And pis is þe tenour of þe *lettre* þat he sent till hym.

4 ¹ 'Darius, kyng of kynges, and lord of all erthely lordes euen like vnto sonne schynande, wit þe goddez of Perse, vntill Alexander oure *seruand* we send. We hafe vnderstanden now on late, whare-of we meruelle vs gretely, þat þou ert so rayсед
8 in pride and vayne glorye, þat þou hase sembled togedir a company of robbours and thefez oute of þe weste parties, and castez þe for to com in-till oure parties, supposynge thurgh þam for to ouer-sett and constreyne þe grete myghte & þe
12 vertue of þe *percyens*, whase strenghte þou may neuer sloken ne ouercome, suppose þou gadirde & sembled togedir all þe werlde. For I do þe wele to wiete þou myghte nerehand alsonne nommer þe *sternes* of heuen, as þe folke of þe empire of Perse. Oure
16 goddez also ², * by whaym all þis werlde es gouerned & sustened, praysez & commendez oure name passyng all *oper nacyons*. 'Bot nozte wit-standynge pis; þou as a littill bisne & a dwerge, a halfe man & ortez of alle men, desyrand to ouer-
20 passe þi littillnesse, rizte as a mouse crepez oute of hir hole, so þou ert cropen out of þe lande of Sethym, wenyng wit a few rebawdez to conquere & optene þe landez of Perse brade & lange, & to ryotte & playe the in thaim as myesse douse in þe house
24 whare na cattes ere. Bot I þat priualy hase aspied thi gatez, whē þou wenez moste seurely for to sterte abowte, I saff sterte apōn þe & take þe; & so in wrechidnes saff thi dayes fouly hafe an ende. 'A grete Foly þou dide for to take apōn the
28 swylke a *presumpcyon*. It ware full faire to þe, if þou myghte bi oure lefe, wit oure beneuolence, ocupie all anely þe rewme of Macedoyne, zeldynge *parefore* till vs zereyly a certane tribute, if all þou couetid nozte oure empire. *Pare-fore* it es gude þat
32 þou lefe thi fonned *purposse*, and wende hame agayne, and sett the in thi moder knee. And lo, I sende the here a littill baile, wit þe whilke als a childe þou may play the. For þou ert bot a childe. It es mare semely þat þou vse childez gammez þan
36 dedez of armes. 'We knawe wele thi pouert and thi nede, and

portrait and he despises him for his short stature.

Darius writes to Alexander, telling him how he has heard of his band of thieves and robbers, and that they could never overcome the power of Persia.

* Leaf 7 bk.

He tells Alexander of his meanness and wretchedness who wishes, like some mouse crept out of her hole when the cat is gone, to dispart him in the broad lands of Persia. But Darius shall pounce upon him when least awaited.

It were a great gift to leave him Macedonia alone, under tribute. He had better go home to his mother's knee. He sends him a play ball as more beseming him.

¹ Four half lines and miniature D with a king's head within.

² At bottom of leaf 7, first side, are

written in large characters indistinctly
... *kychyn ys att a Rio* ...

Does Alexander dream of subduing the rich Empire of Persia. He advises him to return home again or he will send a force to hang him as a thief on a gibbet.

The messengers deliver Alexander the ball and the letters. His knights, hearing it read, are astounded and cast down.

* Leaf 8.

Alexander consoles his men with the hope that what Darius says of the wealth of Persia may be true, and he exhorts them to fight for it manfully.

He bids his knights bind the messengers and lead them forth to be hanged. They lead them forth thus, but the messengers beg for mercy. Alexander tells them why he

pat þou hase vnnethes whare wit þou may sustene thi caytyfde corse. Wenez þou, than, to brynge vnder thi subieccioñ the empyre of Darius. I say the by my Fader saule, pat in the rewme of Perse *pare* es so grete plente of golde, þat, & it were 4 gadirde to gedir on a hepe, It schulde passe þe clerenes of þe soñ. Whare-fore we commande the, and straitely enioynez the, þat þou leue thi fole pride and thi vayne glory, & tourne hame agayne to Macedoynne. And if þou wilt nozte soo, we saiff sende 8 to þe a multitude of meñ of armez swilke ane saw þou neuer, þe whilke saiff take þe, and hyng þe hye oñ a gebett as a traytour and a mayster of theesefz: and nozte as þe son of Philippe.'

¹ When þe messengers þat were sent fra Darius come to 12 king Alexander, þay gaffe hym the *lettres*, and þe baffe & oþer certane Iapes, þat þe emperour sent hym in scorne. And Alexander tuke þe *lettres*, and gert rede it openly by-fore alle meñ, and Alexander knyghtes when þay herde þe tenour of þe 16 *lettres* ware gretly astonayde and wonder heuy. And when Alexander sawe þam so heuy by cause of þe *lettre*, he saide vn-to þam: 'a a, my worthy knyghtis,' quop he, 'are ze fered for þe prowde wordez þat are contened in Darius *lettres*, wate ze 20 noghte wele þat hundez, þat berkes* mekill, bytez meñ noghte so sone, als doeþ hundes þat commez one meñ wit-outten berkyng. We trewe wele þe *lettre* says sothe of some thynggez, þat es to² saye, of þe grete plentee of golde, þat Darius sais he 24 hase. And þarefore late vs manly feghte wit hym and we saiff hafe þat golde. For þe grete multitude of his golde, als me thynke, schulde gare vs be balde and hardy for to fighte wit hym manly.' 28

When Alexander had saide thir wordez he bade his knyghtis take the messengers of Darius and bynd þaire handez bi-hynde þam, & lede þam furthe to the galowes, & hyng þam. And þay tuke þe messengers & bande þam, and began for to lede 32 þam furthe to þe galowes-warde, and þam þe messengers bigañ for to crye rewfully vntill Alexander & sayd: 'A, A wirchipfull lorde & kyng', quop þay, 'whate hafe we trespaste, þat we schaff be haungede for oure kynges dedis'. And þam kyng 36 Alexander ansuerd: 'þe wordez of þour Emperour', quop he, 'gers me do þis, þat sent þow vn-to me, as vnto a theeffe, as þe

¹ Five half lines space with a miniature W.

² to in margin of MS.

lettre whilke 3e broghte witnessez': 'A, A lorde', quop pay, will hang them. They promise to make known to Darius Alexander's real character. King Alexander, loosing them, bids them come to meat. They propose to Alexander that they should deliver Darius into his hands. He scornfully rejects it.

4 vs gaa, and we schall mak aknawen vntill hym 3our grete glory, 3our ryaltee, & 3our noblaye.'

pañ kyng Alexander badd his knyghtis lowse pañ, and bryng pañ in-till his hauße, to þe mete. And thare he made 8 pañ a grete feste & a ryall. And as pay satt at the mete, pir messangers saide vn till Alexander, 'lorde,' quop pay, 'if it be plesynge to 3our hye maiestee sendez with vs a thowsand of doghty meñ of armes, and we sail delyuer pañ þe 12 Emperour Darius,' and Alexander ansuerde agayne & said² 'Sittes stille', quop he, '& makes 3ow mery. For I tell 3ow in certayne, for þe betrayinge of 3our kynge, I will noghte graunt 3ow a knyghte wit 3ow'. Apon þe morne, 16 Alexander gart write a lettre vn-to Darius, whareoffe þe tenour was this.

¶ The letter of Alexandere³

4 'Alexander, the soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias, vn-to Darius, kyng of þe land þat schynes⁵ wit þe goddez of Perse, 20 we sende. If we graythely & sothefastly be-halde oure selfe pare es na thyng þat we here hafe þat we may bi righte caste ours, bot all it es lent vs for a tyme. For alle we þat ere whirlede aboute wit þe whele of fortune, now ere we broghte 24 fra reches in-to pouerte: now fra myrthe & ioy in-to Sorowe & heuynesse; and agaynwardez: and now fra heghte, we are plungeded in-to lawnesse. Pare-fore pare schulde na mañ þat es sett in hye degre triste to mekill in his hyenesse, that, thurgh 28 pride & vayne glorie, he schulde despyse þe dedis of oper meñ lesse * þan he. For he wate neuer how sone þe whele of fortune may turne abowte, and caste hym doune to lawe degre, þat sittez hye on-lofte: and rayse hym to hye wirchipe and 32 grete noblaye þat bifore was pore and in lawe degre. And parefore the aughte to thynke grete schame, þat swilke a worthy emperour as meñ haldez the, schulde sende swylke

Alexander, writing, reminds Darius of the unsteadfastness of earthly wealth.

No man of high degree should scorn those lower, for he never knows when the wheel of Fortune may turn about.

* Leaf 8 bk.

Therefore Darius should be ashamed that he, a great

¹ sent in margin of MS.

² & said in margin.

³ The rubric is wrongly placed in the MS. after *dignytez*, p. 24, i. e. at the end of

the letter.

⁴ Five half lines with miniature A.

⁵ *schynes* in margin of MS.

man, behaves
so to Alexander,
a little
man.

The Undying
Gods do not
associate with
men that die.

Alexander
comes as a
mortal man to
fight Darius.

Even if Darius
overcome

Alexander he
shall win no-
thing by it, for
he is but a
little man and
a thief.

Darius's boasts
of the Persians
of old have
heartened
them to attack
the Empire.

The play ball
that was sent
was also a
forecast of his
rule over the
world.

The other
toys like-
wise fore-
tell his rule
over all
men. By
the same,
Darius has
sent tri-
bute to
Alexander.

The letter
is taken to
Darius. He
then
marches on
Persia.

* Leaf 9.
Darius, re-
ceiving

a message vnto me so littill a mañ and so pore. For pou ert
euen lyke to þe sonne, as thi selfe says, sittande in þe trone of
Nitas wit þe goddez of Perse. Bot goddez þat euermare are
liffaunde & neuermare dyez, deynez nozte for to hafe þe sela- 4
chipe of dedely meñ. Sekerly I am a dedely mañ; and to þe
I come as to a dedely man, for to feghte wit the. Bot pou þat
arte so grete & so glorious & callez thi selfe vndedely, Pou sail
wynne na thyng of me, if alle þou hafe þe ouerhande of me. 8
For þou hase ouercommen bot a littill mañ, and a theeffe³ als
þou sayse. And if I hafe þe ouerhande ouer the, It sail be to me
þe gretteste wirchipe þat euere byfelf me, for als mekill als I sail
hafe þe victorye of þe worthieste emperour of þe werlde. Bot 12
þare þou saide, þat, in þe rewme of Perse, es so grete plentee
of golde, þou hase scharpede oure hertiz, and made mare
balde for to feghte with the, & for to wynne þat golde; for
to relese oure pouerte wit-all, & putte awaye our nede whilke 16
þou says we hafe. In þat also, þat þou sent vs a hande-baſſe
and oper barne-laykaynes, þou prophicyed riȝte, and betakend
bi-fore, thynges þat we trewe, thurgh goddez helpe, sail faſſe
vn-till vs. By þe rowndenes of þe baſſe, we vnderstande 20
all the werld aboute vs, þe whilke sail faſſe vnder oure subiec-
cion. Bi þe tane of þe laykanes þat þou sent vs, þe whilke es
made of wandez and crukez donwardez at þe ouerend; we vnder-
stand þat all þe kynges of þe werlde, and all þe grete lordez, 24
sail lowte till vs. Bi þe toper laykan, þat es of golde, and
hase apon it, as it ware, a mannez hede, we vnderstande þat
we sail hafe þe victorye of all meñ and neuer be ouercommen.
And pou þat ert so grete & so myghty hase now onwardez sent 28
vs trybute, in als mekeſſ als þou sent vs a handbaſſe, and þir
oper thynges þat I rehersed by-fore, the whilke contenez in
þam so grete dignytez.⁷

¹ When pis lettre was wreten, Alexander called till þe mes- 32
sangers of þe Emperour of Perse, and gaffe þam riche gyftes
and betuke þam þe lettre, and badd þam bere it to paire lorde.
And þañ Alexander sembled his Oste, and by-gañ for to wende
toward Perse. When the messangers of Perse come to þe 36
emperour þay talde hym of þe grete ryaltee of kyng Alexan-
der * and tuke hym the letters þat Alexander sent hym. And

¹ Four half lines space with miniature W.

pe emperour garte rede þam. And when he herd þam redde he was wonder wrathe, and sent a *lettre* belyue vn-till twa grete lordez that hadd þe gouernance of þe empire vnder hym sayand þam on this wiese.

Alexander's letter, writes to his two great lords,

¹ Darius kyng of kynges and lorde of lordes vntill oure trewe legeþ *Primus* & *Antyochns*, gretynge and ioi. We here tell þat Alexander, Philippe sonne of Macedoyne, es so heghe raysede in pryde, þat he es rebelle agaynes vs, & es commen in-till Asye, and hase destroyed it vtterly. And 3itt hym thynke no3te this ynoghe, bot he *purposeþ* hym for to come nere vs, and do þe same till oberre cuntre3 of oure empire as he hase done tyll Asye. Whare-fore we comande 3owe o payne of 3our legeance, þat 3e semble þe grete meñ & þe worthy of oure empyre, wit ober of our trewe legeþ; and, in all þe haste þat 3e may, gase & counters 3one childe, takand hym, and bryngand hym bi-fore oure presence, þat we may lasche hym wele, als a wanton childe schulde be: and clethe hym in *purpoure*; & so send hym till his moder *Olympias* wele chastyede. For it semeþ no3te to be a feghter: but for to vse childe gammeþ.

telling them of Alexander's boldness and bidding them take him prisoner so that Darius may whip him as a naughty child and send him home to his mother.

² Thire twa lordes *Primus* and *Antyochns*, when þay hadde redde this *lettre* of þe emperour, þay wrate agayne vntill him on this wyse. 'Vn-to *Darius*, kyng of kynges, grete godd, *Primus* & *Antiochns*, seruyce þat þay kañ do. To 3our heghe maieste we make it aknawen, þat þe childe *Alexandere*, whilke 3e speke off, hase all vtterly destroyed 3our cuntree. And we sembled'a grete multytude of folke, and faughte wit hym; bot he hase discomfit vs, and we were fayne for to flee. For unethe myghte any of vs wyne awaye wit þe lyfe. Pare-fore we þat 3e say ere helpers vnto 3owe, besekeþ 3our hye maiestee that 3e send sum socoure till vs 3our trewe leges.' Whenn *Darius* hadde redde pis *lettre*, pare come anoþer messenger till hym and talde hym þat Alexander and his Oste hade lugede þam appon the water of *Strume*. And whenn *Darius* herd þat he wrate anoþer *lettre* vntill Alexander, of whilke pis was þe tenour.

Primus and *Antiochns* reply, telling of their utter defeat at the hands of Alexander and begging for help.

Darius is told of the camping of Alexander on the river *Strume*.

³ *Darius*, kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, vn-till oure seruande Alexander, Thorowte all þe werlde þe name of

Darius writes again to

¹ Space for four lines.

² Miniature and M space for four lines.

³ Four half lines and space with a miniature D, with king's head within.

Alexander
telling him
to retire
before his
vengeance
fall upon
him.

* Leaf 9 bk.

Darius es praysed & commended. Oure goddez also hase it wreten in thaire bukes. How than durste pou be so balde, for to passe so many waters, and seez, Mountaynes & craggez, for to werraye agaynes oure royalle maiestee. A grete wirchip 4 me thynke it * ware to þe, if pou myghte mawgre oures, hafe in possessioun þe kyngdome of Macedoyne all anely, wit-owtten mare. Thare-fore the es better amend þe of thi mysededis, þan we take swilke wreke appon the, þat oper men take bisne þare- 8 by, seð alle þe erthe wit-owtten oure lordchipe, may be callede wedowe. Torne agayne þare-fore, we consaile þe, in-to thynd awennd cuntree, are oure wrethe and oure wreke fatte apou þe. Neuer-þe-lesse, þat oure wirchippe & oure grete noblaye 12 be sumwhate knawend to þe, we sende the a malefull of chesseboffe sede, in takennyng þare-of. Luke if pou may nombir & telle all þir chesseboffe sede, & if pou do þat þand may þe folke of oure oste be nowmerd. And if pou 16 may nozte do þat oure folke may nozte be nowmerd. Þare-for turnee hame agayne in-to þi cuntree and lefe þi foly þat pou hase bygund, and take na mare apou þe swilke a presumpcion, for I tell þe we haffe men of armes wit-oute 20 nowmmere'.

They bring
Alexander
the letter.
But he
finds
another
meaning
for the
tokens.

He hears of
the heavy
sickness of
his mother.
Altho' cast
down by
the news
he writes a
letter to
Darius.
He tells
him that
for other
reasons he
is forced
unwilling-
ly to re-
turn, but
bids him
not put it

¹ When þe Messengers of Darius come till Alexander, þay tuk hym þe lettre and þe malefull of chesseboffe sede. Alexander þand gerte rede þe letter. And sythen he putt 24 his hand in þe male, and tuke of þe chesseboffe sede & putt in his mouthe, & chewed it, & said; 'I see wele', quop he, 'þat he hase many men, bot þay are rizte soft as this sede are'. In þe mene tyme þare come a Messenger till Alexander fra 28 Macedoyne: and talde hym þat his Moder Olympias was grefe seke. And [when] Alexander herd þis, he was wonder heuy. Neuer þe lesse, he wrate vn to Darius a lettre, þat spakke on this wyse. 32

² Alexander þe soñ of Philippe & of qwene Olympias vn-to Darius kyng of Perse, we sende. We do þe wele to wiete þat we hafe herde certane tythynges, whilke gers vs agayne, oure will do þat we now sail saye. Bot trow pou nozte þat we 36 for fere or dowte of thi pride and þi wayne glorye turne hame agayne now till oure awennd cuntre, Bot all anely for to vesett

¹ Four lines space with miniature W.

² Three lines space.

oure Moder Olympias, whilke lygges grefe seke. Bot wete þou wele, wit in schorte tym̄, we schall haste vs agayne, wit a grete nowmere of fresche knyghtis. And riȝte als þou sent vs a
 4 malefull of chessebolle sedeȝ; so we sende þe here a littill peper. For þou schulde witte þat riȝte as þe scharpenes of þis littill peper passeȝ þe multitude of þe chessebolle sedeȝ, riȝte so þe grete multitude of þe Persyenes saff be ouer-comen̄ wit a fewe
 8 knyghtis of Macedoynne.'

¹This *lettre* be-kende Alexander to þe knyghtis of Darius, þe peper also, & bad' þam̄ bere þam̄ to þe emperour. And he gaffe þam̄ grete gyftes and riche, and sent þam̄ furthe.
 12 And þam̄ he *turnede* * agayne wit his Oste towarde Macedoynne.

There was þe same tyme a wonder wyse mañ of werre þe whilke highte Amorca, and he was prynce-werres in Araby, and lay þare wit a grete multitude of meñ in awayte of
 16 Alexander & his Oste. And when̄ he herde tell of þe commyng of Alexander, he redied' hym for to kepe hym. And when̄ þay mett, þay faught to-geder all þe daye fra þe morne till þe eueñ. And so þay dide all þase thre deyes. And þare was so mekill
 20 folke dede in þat bataile, þat þe sone wexe eclipte & wit-drewe his lighte, vggande for to see so mekill scheddyng of blude. Bot at laste þe Percyenes ware so thikke-falde felled' to þe grounde, þat paire prynce Amorca turned' þe bakke & fledd'
 24 and vnnetheȝ myghte wynñ awaye, and a fewe wit hym. So hastily fledd' Amorca, þat he come nerehand' alson to Darius, as his messagers did' þat come fra Alexander, and fand' Darius haldand' þe *lettre* in his hande, þat Alexander sent hym̄,
 28 and spirrande what Alexander did' wit þe chessbolle sedeȝ. And þe messangers ansuerd' & said': 'He tuke of þe chessbolle sedeȝ', quop' þay, 'and chewed' of þam̄, & said'. I see wele,' quop' he, 'þat Darius hase many meñ, bot þay are wonder softe';
 32 And than Darius tuk of þe peper, þat Alexander sent, and putt in his mouthe and chewed' it. And when he felide þe strenghe of it, and þe grete hete, he syghede sare, and saide: 'Alexander knyghtis', quop' he, 'are bot fewe, bot and þay be
 36 als strange in þam̄ selfe, as þis peper es in it selfe, þay saff fynde nane in þis werlde þat may agaynstande þam̄.' And þan ansuerde Amorca & saide, 'Forsothe, lorde', quop' he, 'ȝe

down to his own vainglory or pride. He shall come again with a fresh host. And he sends him in return a little pepper. He dispatches Darius's messengers back with the letter.
 * Leaf 10. Amorca tries to ambuscade Alexander.

They fought three whole days till the sun grew dark with dread, seeing the number of the slain. So many of the Persians were slain that at last Amorca had to flee. He fled so quickly to Darius that he found him reading Alexander's letter. Darius sighs at the sharpness of the pepper.

¹ Five lines space with miniature A.

Alexander's humility and courtesy to his fallen foes.

His further march.

Alexander sacrifices to the Sun in Phrygia.

* Leaf 10 bk.

Alexander answers a flatterer, he had rather be a wise man's disciple than have the praises of Achilles. Alexander marches again towards Persia.

The citizens of Abandria shut their gates against him. But

say sothe, Alexander hase few knyghtis, bot þay ere strange, þat hase slaen my knyghtis þat ware so many, so þat¹ vnnethez myghte I eschappe owte of þaire handez.' Alexander, if alle² he hade þe victorye of his enemys, he bare hym neuer 4 þe hiere þare-fore, ne empridede hym nozte þare-of. Bot bathe Percyenez & the Macedoyns þat ware slaen, he gert brynge to beryell. And það he come wit his Oste in-to Ceciff, whare many Citez submyt það vñ-tiff hym, and of that rewme, 8 þare went wit hym: xvij. M. feghtyng meñ. And fra thethyñ he come tiff Ysaury, þe whilke, wit-owtten any agayne standyng, was 3olden vntiff hym. And Alexander went vp apoñ þe Mounte Taurus, and fande þare a citee þat meñ callede 12 Persypolis, and thare he tuk wit hym a certane of meñ of Armes, and went so thurgh Asye, and wañ many Citez. And so he come in-to Frigy, and went in-to þe temple of þe soñ, and thare he made sacrafyce to þe soñ. Fra thethyñ, he come 16 to a reuere, þat es called Stamandra, and þare he said tiff his men. 'Blyste mote 3e be',* quop he, 'þat hase getyñ þe comendacions & þe praysynges of þe gude doctour Homerus', and aue of his meñ ansuerde & said; 'Mi lorde kyng', quop 20 he, 'Me thynke I may sauely writte ma praysynges, & lonynge3 of the, það Homerus did of það þat distruyede þe Citee of Trayane. For þou hase done in þi tyme ma wirchipfuff thynges, það euer did þay.' And Alexander [ansuerd,] & said, 24 'Me ware leuer,' quop he, 'be a wyse manes disciple þan for to hafe þe lonynge3 of Achille3.' After this he remouede wit his Oste into Macedoyne, & fande his Modir Olympias wele couerd of hir sekene3, and suggournede þare wit her a while. 28 And thañ he ordeyned hym for to wende agayne into Persy, And keste hym for to logge at a Citee, þat meñ calle3 Abandryañ. The meñ of þe Citee, when þay herde telle of his commynge, þay sperede þe gates of þe Citee, and wachede þe citee 32 one ilke a syde. And when Alexander saw þat, he went & assailede þe Citee. And þe burge3 of þe Citee, when þay sawe þat þe citee was nozte strange ynoghe of þe selfe, for to agaynstande þe assawte of þaire enemys, þay criede tiff 36 Alexander & saide: 'Kyng Alexander,' quop þay, 'we spered

¹ 'pat' almost blotted out by stain in MS.

² 'alle' almost blotted out by same stain as above.

noȝte þe ȝates of [the] citee to þat entent for to agayneſtande
 the, Bot allanly for þe drede of Darius, kyng of Perse, þe
 whilke as it was tolde tiſſ vs, es purpoſſede for to ſend' his
 4 meñ hedir, for to deſtroye vs & oure citee.' And þañ Alexander
 ſaid' vnto þañ agayñ. 'Iſſe ȝe wiſſ,' quop he, 'þat we diſtroy
 ȝow noȝte, openeȝ ȝour ȝates, and wheñ I haſe made an ende
 wit Darius, þañ ſaſſ I come agayne, & ſpeke wit ȝowe.' And
 8 þañ þe Citazenes opened þe ȝates. Fra thetheñ þay went to
 Comnoliche. And fra thethyñ to Bihoy, and ſo to Caldiple.
 Syne þay come¹ tiſſ a grete reuere, whare Alexander Oste hadd'
 grete defaute of vetailſ, and þañ his knyghtis murnede gretely
 12 and ſaid; 'Oure horſes,' quop þay, 'fayleȝ vs ay mare & mare.'
 Alexander anſuerd; & ſaid; 'A A, my doghty knyghtis,' quop
 he, 'þat ȝitt heder-towardeȝ haſe in werreȝ ſuffred' many
 perillſ & mekill diſeſſe, ere ȝe nowe in deſpeyre of ȝour hele
 16 for þe failynge of ȝour horſeȝ, ſaſſ we noȝte gete horſeȝ ynowe,
 and we lyſſe & haſe qwert, and if we dye we ſaſſ haſe na nede
 of horſe, na þay may do us na prophete. Haſte we vs þare-fore
 in aſſ þat we maye to þe place whare² we ſaſſ gete horſeȝ wit-
 20 owttēñ nowmer, and vetailſ alſo, bathe for oure ſelſe & for oure
 horſeȝ.' Wheñ he hadd' aſſ ſaide, þay went furthe and come tiſſ
 a place þat es called Luctus, þat es to ſaye wepynge,*³ whar þay
 fande vetailſ ynoghe, and mete ynoghe for þaire horſe. Fra
 24 thethyñ þay remoued' & come tiſſ a place þat hatt Trigagantes,
 and þare þay lugeð' þañ. And Alexander went in-to a temple
 of Apollo; whare alſe he aghteled' to haſe made Sacraſſice, and
 haſe hadd' anſuere of that godd' of certane thynges þat he walde
 28 haſe aſchede. Bot a woman þat hiȝte ȝacora, whilke was preſte
 of þat temple, talde Alexander þat þañ was noȝte þe tyme of
 anſuere. On þe Morne Alexander come to þe temple & made
 hiſ ſacraſſice. And Apollo ſaid' tiſſ Alexander, 'Hercules,'
 32 quop he. And Alexander anſuerd; & ſaid; 'Now þat þou
 calleȝ me Hercules,' quop he: 'I ſee wele þat aſſ thyñ anſuers
 ere falſe.' Fra thethyñ Alexander went till a citee þat es called
 Thebea, and ſaid vn-to þe folke of þe citee: 'Sendeȝ me furthe,'
 36 quop he, 'fourē hundreth knyghtis, wele armed, for to wend wit

fearing him they
 tell him
 that they
 had done
 ſo to with-
 ſtand Da-
 rius. And
 they open
 their gates.

Alexan-
 der's
 knights
 complain
 that their
 horſes are
 failing
 them.
 Alexander
 exhorts
 them to
 endure to
 the end.

* Leaf 11.

Alexander
 gets a lying
 answer of
 Apollo,
 who calls
 him Her-
 cules.

Alexander
 calls on
 the The-
 beans to

¹ MS. *went* crossed through by the scribe, and replaced by *come* in MS. itself.

² *whare* corrected from *þare* in MS.

³ On leaf 11 a more regular, orderly, and distinctive handwriting begins in the MS.

send him help. But they, refusing, shut their gates.

Alexander jeers at them.

He sends four thousand archers to shoot down the watches on the wall, two hundred miners to mine the walls, a hundred to burn down the gates, and four hundred engineers to batter the walls in. Himself with the rest lay by to help them when necessary.

The story of Cicesterus and Hismon.

* Leaf 11 bk.

Alexander refuses mercy to the city, and raises it to the earth. Clitomarus, one of the citizens, fares away with the conquerors. The Thebeans ask

vs in suppoellyng of vs.' And when þe Thebeans herd thir worde3, pay spered þe 3ates of þe citee, for to agayne-stande Alexander, and went to þe walle3, and cried lowde þat Alexander myghte here: 'Alexander,' quop þay, 'bot if [þou] gaa hethyð fra vs, we 4 sañ do the a velany, & thi knyghtis also.' When Alexander herde this, he smyled & saide: '3e Thebeens,' quop he, 'þat ere so mekiñ praysed & commended of strenghe, Spere 3e 3our 3ates & saise 3e wiñ feghte wit me; þare es na doghety mañ of arme3 8 þat couete3 for to haue wirchip and loos; þat wiñ close hym witin walles, bot fightes wit his enemys manly in þe felde.' When he hadd saide thir worde3, he bad þat foure thowsande3 archers sulde gaa abowte þe citee wit paire bowes, & lay apou 12 þaṁ wit arowes þat stode apou þe walle3. And he bad two hundreth meñ of armes ga to þe walles, and myne þaṁ doune, and a hundrethe he bad take fyrebrande3, & gaa to þe 3ates & brynne þaṁ. And he ordeynde oper foure hundreth meñ, 16 for to bett douñ þe walles wit Sewes of werre, Engynes and Gones & oper maner of Instrumente3 of werre. And hym selfe, and þe remenant of þe oste lay nere þaṁ to socour þaṁ when þay hadd nede. And belyfe fra þay hadd gyffē assawte to þe 20 citee, þe 3ates ware brynt, & mekiñ folke was slayne witin þe citee, Sum wit arowes, sum wit stanes of Engynes; þe Fire also by-gaṁ for to sett in house3 wit-in þe citee, & rayse a grete lowe. In þe Oste of Alexander was, þe same tyme, a mañ þe 24 whilke highte Cicesterus, a grete enemy to þe citee. He, when he sawe þe citee bryne, made righte mery.* Bot a mañ of the citee þat highte Hismon, when he saw his cuntree þugates be destruyed, come and felle one knees be-fore Alexander, and 28 bigaṁ for to synge a sange of Musyke & of murnyge wit an Instrument of Musike, Supposyng þare-by for to drawe Alexanders herte to Mercy, & styrre hym to hafe rewthe on þe citee. Alexander be-helde hym, & sayde: 'Maister,' quop he, 'whare- 32 to synge; þou me þis sange?' 'A A lorde,' quop Hismon, 'to luke 3ife I myzte styrre þi herte to hafe mercy ou þe citee.' And þaṁ Alexander was wonder wrathe, and bad dyng þe walles of þe cetee douñ to þe harde erthe. And when þay had so done 36 þay remoued & went paire way, and ane of þe worthieste meñ of þe citee, þe whilke hyghte Clitomarus, went wit þaṁ in company. Bot þe Thebeens þat ware lefte aftire þe birnyng

of þe citee went to þe temple of Apollo, and askede weþer euer
mare þaire citee sulde be repaireld agayne. Apollo ansuerde,
& said; 'he þat schall bygge þis citee agayne sall haue thre
4 victories. And when he hase geten thre victories, he sall
onane come & reparell this citee, and bigge it agayne, also
wele, als euer it was.'

¹ Alexander fra þe citee of Thebe, went to Corynthe, and þare
8 come till hym certane lordes, prayand hym þat he walde come
& see a wrestillynge. And he graunted þan. And to þis Ilke
wrestillynge þare come folke witowtten nowmer. And when
all men were gadirde, Alexander saide: 'whilk of þowe,' quop
12 he, 'sall gaa & be-gynn þis playe'. Clitomarus þan, of whaym
I spake bifore, knelid' bi-fore þe kyng, & saide: 'lorde,' quop
he, '& 3e wolle vouche-saffe to giffe me leue, I will be-gyn'.
And Alexander bad hym ga to. And Clitomarus went in-to þe
16 place, and þe firste man þat come in his hande, at the first
tourne he threwe hym wide open. And Alexander said vntill
hym: 'Caste thre men,' quop he, '& þou sall be coround'.
þan þare come anoper man to Clitomarus and vnnethe; he come
20 in his hande, when he was caste wyde open. And one þe
same wyse he seruede þe thirde. And þan Alexander gart sett
on his heuede a precious coround, and þe kynges seruaunde;
spirrede hym what his name was. 'My name,' quop he, 'es wit
24 owtten citee'. When Alexander herde þat he saide vn-till
hym: 'Thou noble wristiller,' quop he, 'whi arte þou called wit
owtten citee.' 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'be-fore þat 3e
werede þe emperours Dyademe, I hadde a citee full of folkez
28 & of reches. Bot now, sene 3e come to this astate & þis
dignytee, I am spoylede & priuede of my citee.' And when
[he] herde this, he wiste wele þat he ment of þe citee of
Thebe. And þan he garte his sergeante; * make a crye that
32 [he] hadd' giffen Clitomarus leue for to repairelle þe citee
of Thebes. Fra Corinth, Alexander and his oste remowed till
a citee þat highte Platea, of þe whilke a man þat highte Scras-
geras was prynee. And Alexander went to þe temple of Diane,
36 and fande þare a woman preste, þe whilke was a mayden, & scho
was araid' lyke preste; of þat tymme. And when [scho] sawe
Alexander, scho saide vn-till hym: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'þou

an oracle of
Apollo as to
whether
their city
should ever
be rebuilt.
The answer
is, it shall
be rebuilt
by a three-
fold victor.
Alexander
is invited
to a wrest-
ling.
He asks
who will
begin.

Clitomarus
begs the
favour of
so doing.

He wins
once.
Alexan-
der's pro-
mise.
He wins
twice.
He wins
thrice.
Crowning
him they
ask him
his name.
He
answers,
'One with-
out City.'
How it be-
fell with
his answer.

* Leaf 12.

From
Corinth
they go to
Platea and
the Tem-
ple of
Diana.
The maid-
en Priestess

¹ Five half lines space with miniature A, with knight within.

and her
prophecy.

Scras-
sageras
curses the
priestess,
but it
avails him
nothing.

He falls
from his
Lordship
and flees to
Athens, and
prevails on
them to
help him.

Alexander
marches on
Athens.

The letter
of Alex-
ander to
the Athe-
nians, tell-
ing of his
deeds and
conquests.

He asks of
them but
ten philo-

arte welcome. þou schalt conquere all þe werlde.' One þe morne Sc rassageras went to þe same temple, and alsone als þe preste sawe hym, scho saide vn-till hym: 'Sc rassageras,' quop scho, 'what thou wit-in a schorte while þou schalt be priued' of 4 þe lordchip þat þou now hase?' And when he herde þis he was righte wrathe wit hir, & saide, 'þou arte nozte worthy,' quop he, 'for to be preste here. Alexander come to þe 3isterdaye, and þou prophicyed' hym gude; And to me þou sais, þat I schalt lose all 8 my lordechipe.' And scho ansuerd; & saide, 'Beez nozte angry to me,' quop scho: 'for all þis buse be fulfilled; and nathynge þare of lefte ne ouerhippede.' A littill after it fette þat Alexander was gretely angrede at Sc rassageras, and tuke fra 12 hym his lordchipe, & Sc rassageras went to þe cite of Athenez, and sare wepande he compleuede hym to þe citazenes of Athenez & talde þam how þat Alexander hadd' priued' hym of his lordechipe. And þam þe Atheneanes ware wonder [wrathe] towards 16 Alexander, and made grete boste & manace, þat þay schold' ryse agaynes hym, bot if he restorede Sc rassageras agayne till his lordechipe. Alexander remoued' his Oste fra Platea to þe citee of Athenes, and when [he] herde tesse þat þe Athenens ware 20 wrathe till hym-warde, and manaced' hym, he wrate vn-to þam a lettre þat spak one this wyse.

¹ Alexander, þe son of Philippe and of qwene Olympias, vn to the Athenenes, gretynge. Fra þe tyme þat oure Fadir was 24 dedde, & we were sett in þe Trone of his dingnytee, we went into þe weste Marches, whare all þe folkez þat duellez thare for þe maste party zalde þam vn-till vs wit-owtten stresse. Fra þe citee of Rome to þe weste see occyane, all meñ sub- 28 mytte þam vn-till vs þat wit oure awen fre will we hafe taken þam ² till oure grace. And these þat walde nozte submytt þam till vs wit fairenes, we hafe destruyed³ þam & paire citez, and doungeñ þam down to þe erthe. And now þis oper 32 daye as we went fra Macedoyne & passed thurgh Asye: bi þe cite of Thebe, þe Thebeyens despysed vs, & lete as þay sett nozte by vs. Bot onane we garte pair pryde falle, and de-

¹ Four half lines space with miniature A.

² Here the scribe first has written 'to grace' and then erased it, substituting as

in text.

³ The *uy* in *destruyed* has been substituted for *uu* by the same scribe.

struyed bathe þam̄ & thaire citee. And þare-fore we write vn-to 3ow; that 3e sende vs ten̄ philosophres þat be wyse, * by þe whilke we may be encensed and conselled. For oper thyng
 4 wiff we nane aske 3ow, Bot alle anely þat þe halde vs for 3our lorde & 3our kyng. And 3if 3e wiff nozte submytt 3owe vn-tiff vs, 3ow buse oper be strangere þam̄ we, or ellis submytt 3ow to sum lordechip̄, þat be strangere þam̄ oures.
 8 ¹The Athenyenes redd' pis lettre and þan þay bigan to crye one highte. And ane, þat highte Eschiffe, stode vp amange; þam̄, and said: 'It es fully my conseil,' quop he, 'þat we on̄ na wise assent [to thise] wordez of Alexander.' Alle þe folke þam̄
 12 þat was gadirde þare, prayed þe philosophre Demostines, þat he walde telf þam̄ his conselle, as touchyng þat matere. And he stude vp, & badd' all men̄ be stiff. And þam̄ he said' vn-to þam̄. 'Sirs,' quop he, 'I pray 3ow takes tent vn-to my wordez &
 16 herkenes gudly what I sailt say. If 3e fele 3ow of power, for tiff agayne-stande Alexander, & to supprise hym, þam̄ feghtes wit hym manly, and obeys nozte tiff his wordez. And if 3e suppose 3e be nozte strange ynoghe to feghte wit hym̄ þan
 20 here; hym̄, and obeys vn-tiff hym̄. 3e knawe wele, þat als oure eldirs telles vs, 3erses was a grett kyng, & a myghty, and many victories he gatt. And neuer þe lesse in Ellada he suffrede grete meschefe. Bot he, this Alexander, hase done
 24 many bataiffes, in þe whilke he suffrede neuer disese bot alwaye had þe ouerhande. Þe Thirienes, I pray 3ow, ware [þai] nozte balde knyghtes and strange, and all þaire lyfe hade bene excercysede in Armes? And whate profitede þam̄ þaire strenghe?
 28 Þe Thebienes also þat were so wyse, and so grete excercyse hadde in armes, fra þe firste tyme þat þe citee was bygged; whare-off seruede þaire grete witt þam̄, and þaire grete strength, when̄ Alexander assailede þam̄? Þe Poliponiens faghte wit Alexander,
 32 bot þay myghte na while agayne-stande his men of armes. Bot alsoñ þaire² ware disconfit and slaen. It es nozte vnknawen vn-to 3owe, how many citeez castells & townnez for fere submittis þam̄ vn-tiff hym̄ wit-owtten̄ any assawte gyffyng. Þarefore,
 36 it es nozte my consaile þat 3e be heuy, ne wrathe tiff Alexander

sophers to teach him * Leaf 12 bk.

rendering homage to him; or else must it either be stronger than Alexander or dependent on some stronger state.

The speech of Aeschylus against Alexander. The Athenians beg counsel of Demosthenes.

He tells them if they feel themselves strong enough to resist, but if not then let them submit.

He compares Alexander and Xerxes together.

He narrates Alexander's victorious campaign.

He advises them not to be froward towards Alexander.

¹ Four half lines space with miniature T.

² MS. reads 'paire' for þay. This form

recurs on p. 55, l. 29. Cf. Icelandic þeir. There is nothing left out nor is it a misprint.

Alexander is a wise and reasonable man, neither would he have put Scraſſageras out of his Lordſhip except for treason againſt him.

The Athenians commend this

* Leaf 13.

counſel greatly and ſent tribute but no philoſophers.

He hears of the ſpeeches of both Aechylus and Demotheſenes.

He writes them a letter. The Letter of Alexander to the Athenians.

He had purpoſed a philoſophie diſpute with them, and have ſhown them his friends.

But their deeds ſhewed otherwiſe. Whoſe of them riſes againſt him, he will make an example of. They, as knaves, think ill and fear ill.

He had put S. out of office for treason. They have deſpiſed his demand for ten philoſophers.

For Scraſſageras. For all men knowes wele þat Alexander es a wonder wyſe mañ & a warre, & a mañ þat gouernes hym by reſoñ; and þare-fore 3e may wele wete, he walde nozte putt Scraſſageras oute of his lordechipe upon leſſe þañ forſett vn-4 till hym.¹ When þe Athenyenes had herde þir worde3, þay commedid² gretly the conſeille of Demostines, and than they ordeyned a corouñ of golde þe weghte of .l. pounce, and ſent Meſſangers þarewit, and wit tribute vn-till Alexander, bot 8 philoſophres ſent þay naue. * And when þire Meſſangers come till Alexander, þay gaffe hym þe corouñ, and þe tribute, þat þe Athenyenes ſent hym, and talde hym þat þay had highte hym a grete nowmer of catelle. And when Alexander had herd þam, 12 he vnderſtode wele þe conceit of Eſchilus þat conceid³ þe Athenyenes to agayneſtand⁴ hym, and alſo þe conceit of Demostenes that conceid⁵ þam þe contrary, and þañ he wrate a lettre to þam where-of the Tenoure was this. 16

¹ Alexander þe ſon of Philippe and quene Olympias, for þe name of kyng wiſſ we nozte take apon vs, before we haſe oure enemyſ vnder oure ſubiectiõ: vn-to þe Athenyenes gretying. It es nozte oure entent to come in 3our citee wit oure oſte, 20 Bot allanly to come & diſpuyte wit 3our philoſophres, and to aſche þam certane queſtyõs, Oure purpoſſe was alſo to haſe declared for oure trewe legge3 & oure gude Frende3. Bot 3our dede3 proues þe contrary, as it ² done vs till vnderſtande. Oure 24 godde3 we take to wiſſe, þat whilke of 3ow ſo ryſe3 agayne3 vs, we ſall take ſwilke wreke apoñ hym þat oper meñ ſall take enſample þare-by. Bot 3e alſ ſchrewes, and euyll men, euer mare trowe3 ill, and thynke3 ill. Wate 3e nozte wele þat 28 þe Thebienes þat riſe agayne3 vs, hadd³ paire mede alſ þay diſſerued. And 3e haſſand⁴ in vs a wrange conſayte, blame3 vs, For we putt Scraſſageras owte of his Office the whilke ⁵ forſett gretly agayne3 oure maieste. We ſent vn-to 3ow bi 32 lettre for ten philoſophres, bot 3e, nozte knawande oure grete powere & oure myghte, deſpysed⁶ oure maundement and walde nozte fulfill it. Neuer þe les if all 3e haſe offendid agayne3

¹ Four half lines with miniature A.

² The reader muſt probably here ſupply 'haſe' between 'as it' and 'us till vnderſtande', but as it occurs ſeveral times it

may be a ſyntactical peculiarity.

³ The reader muſt probably ſupply *was* or *dede* between *þe whilke* and *forſett*, but ſee previous notice.

vs whider-towarde and bene disobeyande till oure maiestee, we forgiffe 3ow all *your* gilt, and þe greuance þat 3e hafe don vs, so þat 3e be obeyande vn-till vs, fra þis tyme forwarde. Com-
 4 forthes 3ow þarefore & beez mery, for of vs 3e schall hafe na greuance ne na disesse be-cause 3e did' after þe conceit of Demostynes.'

¹ When þe Athenyenes herd' þis *lettre* redd', þay ware riȝte
 8 gladd', and þaṁ Alexander & his Oste went fra thethyṁ vn-to Lacedoyne. Bot þe Lacedouns walde one na wyse obey vn-till Alexander, bot said' ilkaṁ of þaṁ tiff oper, 'latt vs noȝte be lykke þe Athenyenes,' quop þay, 'þat drede þe manaschynges,
 12 and þe boste of Alexander bot late vs schewe oure myȝte, and oure strenghe and manly defende * oure citee agayneȝ hym.'
 When þay hadd' saide, þay spered' þe ȝates of þe cetee faste, and went manly to þe walles. And a grete nowmer of þaṁ
 16 tike þaṁ schippeȝ & went to þe see, a grete nauy, to feghte wit Alexander are he come to lande. And when Alexander saw this, he sent a *lettre* to þaṁ sayand on thiȝ wyse.

² 'Alexander þe soṁ of Philippe and of þe quene Olympias
 20 vn-to þe Lacedounes we sende. We conceit 3ow, þat þat, that *your* elders hase lefte 3ow, 3e kepe hale & sound & in saueteȝ³ and lyfteȝ noȝte *your* hende ouer hie to þe thynges þat þe may noȝte reche to. And if 3e desire for to hafe ioy of *your* strenthe,
 24 dose swa þat 3e be worthy to hafe wirchipe of vs. Þarefore we comande 3ow, þat 3e turne agayne wit *your* schippeȝ, and leuez þaṁ, & gase to lande by *your* awenn' fre will; or sekirly I sall sett fire in thaṁ & brynne þaṁ. And if 3ee dispice oure
 28 commandement, blameȝ na maṁ bot *your* selfe, if we wreke vs one 3owe.'

'The Lacedounes redd' þis *lettre*, and when it was redd', þay ware wonder heuy. Noȝte for-thi þay redied þaṁ to feghte.
 32 Bot Alexander arryued' in an oper coste, and come to þe citee are þay wiste and vmylapped' þe citee one ilke a syde, and assaillede it strangly & dange þe Lacedouns of þe walles & slewe many of þaṁ & wounded' many, and sett fyre in þaire
 36 schippeȝ & brynt þaṁ. Þe remanant of þaṁ þat ware lefte

Nevertheless he will forgive them if they be good for the future, since they followed Demosthenes' advice.

Alexander goes thence into Lacedæmonia. But they would in no wise submit to

* Leaf 13 bk.

him. But despising him the Athenians manned the walls. Yet others of them fled over-seas, and others went to meet him in fight.

The Letter of Alexander to the Lacedæmonians bidding them return and submit.

Alexander arrives by an unforeseen way and surrounds them.

He attacks the city

¹ Three lines space miniature W.

² Four half lines with miniature A.

³ MS. *sautee* with *u* written over

another letter.

⁴ Four lines space with miniature T.

fiercely till they surrender.

Alexander tells them they would not receive him peacefully, therefore are they come to this great harm.

Alexander reproaches them with overgreat conceit and quotes a homely proverb.

* Leaf 14.

They thought in vain to have done to him as their forefathers did to King Xerxes.

Darius hears of the coming of Alexander. He is greatly terrified and holds a council.

The speech of Darius. He bewails that he has underrated him, and sees that they must now look to their safety. He fears that God's Foresight helps Alexander so that he may eventually conquer Persia.

appon lyfe, when þay saw this grete meschefe come owte of þe citee vn-till Alexander, & felle douñ at his fete, & besoughte hym of mercy & of grace. And Alexander ansuerd, 'I come to 3ow,' quop he, 'meke & mylde, bot in þat degre 3e walde nozte 4 ressayffe me, þarefore now are 3our schippe3 bryuned, and 3our citee destruyed, & 3our folke3 slayne. Warned I nozte be-fore þat 3e schulde nozte heue 3our hande3 ouer-hye to þe sternes, to þe whilke nane erthely mañ may wynñ. For wha so euer 8 clymbe3 hier, þañ his fete may wynñ to suñ halde, he sañ falle onane douñ to þe grounde. And þarefore es þare a com-mone prouerbe: þat "wha sa hewes to hie, þe chippes will fatte in his egh." 3e wende hafe done till vs as 3our eldirs 12 didde sumetyme till kynge 3erses, bot 3our wenyng dessayued 3ow. For 3e myghte nozte agayne-stande vs when we assailde 3ow.' Whan * he hadd' saide on this wise, he gaffe þañ leue to gaa whare þay walde. And thañ he remouede thethyñ & went 16 to-warde Ciciñ. And when þe emperour Darius herd tell of þe comyng of Alexander, he was gretylly abaiste and sent after all his prince3, Dukes & Erles, & oper grete lordes, & went till a consaile. And he saide vn-to þañ, 'I see wele,' quop he, 'þat 20 he, this Alexander, þat gase thus abowte werrayand, waxe3 gretylly in wirchipe, and ay-whare whare he comme3 he hase þe victory. I wende he hadd' bene a theeffe & a robbour, þat hadde went till cuntre3 þat ere wayke & feble, and durst nozte agayne- 24 stande hym, & robbed þañ & spoyled þañ. Bot now, I see wele, he es a doghty mañ of Armes, & a noble werrayour. And ay þe mare þat I hafe depraued hym and despysed hym; þe mare ryse3 his name, & his wirchipe. I sent hym a balle, a toppe, 28 & a scourge, for to lere barne-laykes; bot hym þat I called a disciple, he seme3 a mayster & whare-so-euer he gase, Fortune gase wit hym. Þare-fore vs byhoue3 to trete of oure hele, & of oure pople3, and pute awaye all pride & all foly: & 32 namare despisse Alexander, saynge þat he es noghte, by cause we are emperour of Perse. For his littiffnes waxes and oure gretnes decresse3. I hafe grete dowte, þat godde3 forluke helpe3 hym, so þat whils we ere abowte, & wene3 to putte hym 36 out of Ellada, we be spoyled, by hym, of þe rewme of Perse.'

¹ When Darius hadd' said thir worde3, his broder Coriather

¹ Four lines.

ansuerd, & said, 'pou hase here,' quop he, 'gretly magnified' & commendid' Alexander, in that, pat pou sais he es mare feruent for to come in-to Perse, pañ we in-till Ellada. And þarefore
 4 if it be plesyng vn-to 3our maiestee, vse 3e þe maners of Alexander, and so sañt [3e] wele & peysably welde 3our empire & conquere many oþer rewmes. Alexander, when he gase to bataile and sañt feghte, he lates [nane] of his pryncez ne his
 8 oþer lordez gaa be-fore, &¹ hym selfe come by-hynde, bot he gase bi-fore pañ alle, and so risez his wirchip & his name.'

Darius' brother advises him to lead his own men in the van as Alexander does.

Quod' Darius, 'wheþer awe me to take sa ensample at
 12 Alexander, or Alexander at me.' A prynce ansuerde & saide, 'Alexander,' quod' he, 'es a warrer² mañ & a wyse, & hase trespaste in na degree & þarefore he duse manly by hym selfe añt pat he doe3. For he hase taken þe fourme of þe lyonñ.'

16 'Whare-by knawes pou þat,' quop Darius, * and he ansuerd, & saide, 'whate tyme,' quop he, 'pat I was sent to Macedoyne for til aske tribute of kyng Philippe, I saw, bi his Figure & his wise ansuere, þat he schuld be a passyng mañ, bathe of witt,
 20 & of doynges. Thare-fore, if it be plesyng vn-to 3ow, I conseñt pat 3e sende till añt þe landez & cuntrez þat langez to 3our empire, pat es to say to Parthy & Medy, Appollamy, Mesopotamy, Ytaly, Bactri, and till añt þe remenant for pay ere
 24 subietez vn-to 3ow a hundreth: c. and fifty l. of dyverse³ folke. To þe lordes of⁴ all thire, I rede 3e sende commandyng pañ, þat þat pay come to 3ow, in añt þe haste þat pay may, with añt þe meñ þat pay may gett whilk ere able to ga to werre⁵. And when
 28 þat pay [ere] añt sembled' to gedir late vs beseke oure goddis of helpe. And pañ Alexander when he seez swilk a multitude of folke agaynes hym, his hert sañt faile hym, and his mens also. And owþer he sañt for fere turne hame agayne till his
 32 aweñ cuntree, or effs submytt hym vn-to 3ow.' And pañ ansuerd' anoþer prynce, & sayde, 'This es a gud conceñt,' quop he, 'bot it es no3te profitable. Wate pou no3te wele þat a wolfe

Darius demurs.

A prince tells him of the person of Alexander, and

*Leaf 14 bk.

advises him to gather a tremendous force that Alexander's heart may fail him.

The counsel is commended but for the

¹ & is written in above the line in the MS. by the same scribe.

² Perhaps the abbreviation is here really a mere flourish, and we should read *warr*, though the contraction mark is well made.

³ In MS. *deverse* was at first written,

and *y* substituted by the same scribe.

⁴ *af* written and crossed out between *lordes* and *of*.

⁵ *were* at first written and changed to *werre* by the scribe.

cowardice
of the
Persians
and the
wisdom of
the Greeks.

Alexander
gathers his
host. He
bathes in a
cold river
and gets a
fever, to
the great
alarm of
his army.

Alexander
summons
Philip his
Physician.
* Leaf 15.

But an-
other Lord
is jealous
of him
and warns
Alexander
that Philip
would
poison
him being
in Darius'
paw.

The Physi-
cian comes
to Alex-
ander.

chase; a grete floke of schepe & gerse þam sparple. Righte so,
and þe wysdome of þe grekes passez oper nacyons.'

¹ In this mene tym, Alexander sembled a gret multitude of
folkez to þe nowmer of cc of feghtyng meñ, and remewed to 4
warde Perse, & come till a reuere þat es called Mociona, of
whilke þe water was wonder calde, & faire, & clere. And
Alexander hadd a grete lystre for to be bathede þare-in, and went
in-to it & bathed hym, & waschede hym þare-in, and also soñ 8
he felle in a feuer and a heued-werke þare-wit, so þat he fure
wonder itt. And when þe Macedoyns saw þaire lorde so grefe
seke, þay were wonder heuy and reghte dredand; and said
amanges selfe: 'And Darius,' quod þay, 'wete þat oure lorde 12
Alexander be þus seke, he sall come & falle apoñ vs sodaynly,
& fordo vs ilkañ. For, and we hadd þe hele of oure lorde
Alexander, we hadd comforth ynoghe & dredde no nacyoñ.'
Than kyng Alexander called till hym his Phicisiene þat 16
highte Philippe & badd hym ordeyne hym a Medcyne for his
sekene. Þis ilk Phicisiene was² * bot a 3ong mañ, bot he was
a passyng kunnyng mañ and a sotell in all þe poyntes þat
langed to phisic. And he highte Alexander, þat [by] a certane 20
drynke he sulde onane make hym all hale. Nowe fell it, þat
was wit Alexander a prynce, þat highte Parmenius & was
lorde of hermony. This prynce hade grete envy to þis
phicisiene, bi-cause þat Alexander luffede hym so passandy 24
wele & belyfe he wrate till Alexander, and warned hym þat
he schulde be warre wit Phillippe his phicisiene, and on na wyse
resayfe þat drynke þat he walde gyffe hym. For he said, þat
Darius had highte to giffe hym his doghter to wyffe & his 28
kyngdom after his dissesse if swa ware, þat he myghte be any
crafte make ane ende of hyñ. When Alexander hadde redd
þis lettre he was na thyng trubbed, so mekill he tristede of
þe conscience of his physician. 32

In þe mene tyme, þis Physician come till Alexander wit þe
forsaid drynke, and Alexander tuk þis drynke in a hande & þe
forsaid lettre in his oper hande and biheld þe Physician in
þe vesage ri3te scharpely. To whome þe Physician saide: 36

¹ Five lines space with miniature I.

² At bottom of leaf 14 obv. is written 'ff (fecit?) Serou. Ser.'

'wirchipfull Emperour,' quop he, 'be na thyng fered bot drynke þe medecyne baldely,' and þaṁ onane Alexander tuk this drynke, & schewed Philippe þe *lettre*. And when Philippe had redde
 4 þe *lettre*, he said till Alexander: 'Now for sothe, my lorde,' quop he, 'I take oure goddes to witnessse þat I ne am noȝte guilty of this tresoṁ, þat here es wretyṁ.' Alexander þaṁ was aff hale als euer he was, & called vn-till Philyppe his phisician
 8 & embraced hym in his armes & said: 'Philippe,' quop he, 'knaues pou how mekiff luffe & triste I hafe in the. Firste I dranke thi medecyne, & syne I schewede þe þe *lettre* þat was sent me agaynes the.' 'Mi lorde,' quop Philippe, 'I be-
 12 seke 3ow þat 3e wolle vochesaffe to send after myṁ accusour, and do hym come bi-fore 3our presence þat þis *lettre* sent vn-to 3ow, and hase lered me for to do¹ swilk a hie tresoṁ. Be-lyfe þaṁ gerte Alexander send after Parmeny for to come vn-till
 16 hym, and gerte þe sothe be serched, & fande þat he was worthy þe dede. And þaṁ he gert girde of his heued.

² Fra þeine kyng Alexander remowed his Oste till hermony þe mare & onane he conquered it, & put it vnder his subieccioṁ.
 20 And fra þeine he trauailed many a day *wit his Oste, and at þe laste come till a cuntre wonder drye, & full of creuesceȝ of cauerneȝ, & alde cisternes whare na water myghte be fundeṁ. And Fra þeine þay passede thurgh a cuntree, þat es called
 24 Andrias, to þe Reuere of Eufrates. And þare þay lugede þaṁ. þan Alexander garte brynge many grete treeȝ, for to make a brygge of ouer þat water, appoṁ schippeȝ, and garte tye þaṁ Sameṁ wit chenys of Ireṁ & ireṁ nayleȝ. And when þe brigge
 28 was aff redy, he badde his knyghtes wende ouer apoṁ it. Bot when þay saw þe grete reuer ryne so swiftly and with so a grete a byrre, thay dred þaṁ þat þe brygge schulde falle. For þay supposede þe chenys schuld breke be-cause of grete
 32 weghte. And, when Alexander saw þaṁ dredand on this wyse, he gert hirde-meṁ, þat were þare kepanṁ katell, wend ouer before, and warnede þat þe Oste schulde folowe þaṁ. Bot 3it þe knyghtis ware ferde & durste noghte wende ouer.
 36 Than was Alexander rizte wrathe and callede vntill hym aff his prynces, & grete lordeȝ, and firste he went hym selfe ouer

Alexander takes the drink given him, and shows the Physician the letter.

Alexander declares to him his great trust.

The trial of the accuser.

Alexander conquers Armenia

* Leaf 15 bk.

the Greater and marches through deserts to the Euphrates. He builds a bridge of boats and logs, but his knights fear to cross it because of the fierceness of the current. Alexander sends herdsman over, yet the knights durst not follow. Alexander then goes

¹ MS. repeats *for to do* twice.

² Three lines with miniature F.

first over the bridge with his princes. Then the army follows. Alexander destroys the bridge behind him. The knights murmur thereat, fearing disaster.

Alexander's speech to his men.

Let them all perish or conquer, for they shall never see home again till they have overthrown all their enemies.

Darius gathers a great force

* Leaf 16.

to meet Alexander upon the river Tigris. But his men flee.

The brave Persian who dares alone try to take Alexander's life in disguise for the sake of the

þe bryges, & all his pryncez folowed hym, and sythen all þe Oste. Twa grete ryuers rynnes thurgh Medee, Mesopotamy and Babiloyne, þat es to say Tygre & Eufrates, and soo rynnez in-to þe reuere¹ of Nilus. When Alexander & all hys Oste⁴ ware past ouer Eufrates, he gert smyte sonder þe brygge þat he hadd gert make bifore, and dissolue ilk a pece þare-off fra oper. And when his knyghtis sawe that, þay ware reghte heuy and murnede gretly þarefore, and said emanges þam selfe, 'What 8 saff we now doo,' quop þay, 'when we are harde by-stadde wit oure enemys & walde flee. For ouer þis reuere may we nozte wynn.' And when Alexander perceyued þat murmoure of his folke, he said vn-to þam. 'What es þat,' quop he, 'þat 3e say 12 amangez 3ow, "If it falle þat we flee owte of þe bataile." Sothely, I late 3ow wele wite, þat þis is þe cause whi I garte for-do þis brygg, þat I gert make; For-thi, þat owþer we schulde feghte manly or eflis if [we] walde flee, we schulde all perische at 16 anes and all drynke of a coppe. For-whi þe victorye es nozte aretted to þam þat fliez, Bot to þam þat babydez, or folowes on þe chace. Þare-fore comforthez 3ow wele, & bese balde of hertis, and thynke it bot a playe stalworthly to feghte. For I say 20 3ow sekerly; we ne schaff neuer see Macedoyne, be-fore we hafe ouercomen all oure enemys, And þam wit þe victorie we saff tourne hame agayne.'

² In þis mene tyme, kyng Darius gadirde a grete multitude²⁴ of meñ agaynes Alexander, and ordeyned ouer þam fyvehundreth * chyftaynes of grete lordes and lused hym wit his meñ apoñ þe reuere of Tygre. And one a day thir twa kynges wit paire bather Ostes mett to-gedir apoñ a faire felde²⁸ and faughte to-gedir wonder egerly. Bot sone Darius meñ hadd þe werre & 3ode to grounde thikkfalde, slayne in þe felde. And when þe remenante saw þat, þay tuk þam to þe flighte. In Darius oste was a mañ of Perse, a doghety, & a balde; ³² to whaym Darius highte for to giffe his doghter to wyfe, if so were, þat he myghte, by any way, sla kyng Alexander. This mañ gatt hym clethyng and Armour like vn-to þe macedoyns, and went amangez þam, as þay faghte, ay tiff he come by-hynd ³⁶ kyng Alexander. And alsoñ als he come nere hym, he lifte his

¹ Scribe first wrote *revere* here, and then wrote a *y* (*rytere*) over it. The process is

quite plain.

² Two lines with small miniature I.

swerde on heghte, & lete flye at hym wit all þe myghte þat he hade, and hitt hym on þe heued¹ so fercely, þat he perched¹ his bacenett, and drewe þe blode of hym. When Alexander knyghtis
 4 saw that: þay tuke hym anone, & broghte hym bifore Alexander, and Alexander, supposyng þat he hadde bene a macedoyne, saide vn-till hym. 'Wirchipfull man,' quop he, ' & doghety & strange what ayled þe at me, for to giffe suylke a strake, knewe þou
 8 nozte wele þat it was I, Alexander þour helpere & þour allere seruande.' And [the] Percyene ansuerd, & said; 'Wiete þou wele wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I ne ame na macedoyne, bot I am a mañ of Perse; and this dede I didd. For kyng
 12 Darius made me a promysse of his doghetir to wife, if I myghte brynge hym thi heid.' Than kyng Alexander called bi-for hym all his knyghtis and askede þaṁ what þaṁ thoghte was for to do wit this mañ. Sum ansuerde & saide þaṁ thoghte it beste
 16 to gerre smyte of his heid; Sum for to putt hym to þe fire for to brynne, Sum to gare drawe & hang hym. And when Alexander had herde þaire conceit, he ansuerd & said: 'Sirs,' quop he, 'what wrange or what defawte can þe fynde in þis mañ, Señ he
 20 hase besied hym tiff obey tiff his lordes commandement, and at his power fulfilled it. Whilke of þow, so demeþ hym worthy to be dedde, es worthy in tyme commynge to hafe þe same dome. For if I commande ane of þow for to ga & sla Darius, þe same
 24 payne, that þe deme þis mañ for to suffre, ware þe worthy for to suffre þourselve of Darius, if þe myzte be getyñ.' ² And * þan he commanded þat he schulde wende hame to his felawes wit-owtteñ any harme. When Darius herde þat his lordes ware slayne in
 28 grete nowmer, he gadered a grete multitude of knyghtis and of fotemen, and went vp on a hill þat es called Taurisius, and thare he made his mustre of his men, supposyng þat he schuld ouercome Alexander thurgh multitude of folke. Bot alsoñ als þay
 32 mett wit þaire bathere osteþ, and bigaṁ for to fighte, Darius men fledd and hymselfe also. And Alexander persuede hym vn-to þe citee of Bactriañ, and þare he lused hym, and offerde Sacrafice tiff his goddeþ. And on þe morne he garte assaile þe

King's daughter.

Alexander asks him why he did this. He answers.

Alexander asks counsel of his knights, what shall he do with this man? Alexander speaks to them, and shows this man forth to them as an example. And then he utters his will.

* Leaf 16 bk.

Darius gathers his men again to the fight, but yet again is he overcome.

Alexander pursues him. He conquers Bac-

¹ The scribe wrote first 'perceed,' altered afterwards, in a very rough way, to 'perched.'

² MS. reads 'and he commanded' at

bottom of first side of leaf 16 and 'þan he commanded' on the top of second side of the same leaf.

trian,
taking
great trea-
sure to-
gether with
Darius'
mother and
wife.

citee, and wanne it on werre. And in þe cheffe place þare-of he sett his trone. And all þir oper citez þat were abowte it, he wanne þam o werre, & putt þam vnder his subieccion. In þis ilke citee of Bactriañ, he fande tresour wit-owtten nowmer, and 4 also his moder, and his wyfe.

A Persian
prince
offers to
betray
Darius to
Alexander
if he will
grant him
ten thou-
sand
knights.
Alex-
ander's
answer.

¹ And in þe mene tyme, whils Alexander lay at Batran: þare come a prynce of Darius oste vn-till Alexander, & said vn-till hym, 'Wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'I hafe a lang tyme bene 8 a knyght of Darius, and done hym grete seruyce; and zitt to this day I had neuer na reward' of hym. And þare-fore if it like vn-to zowre maieste; take me ten thowsande of zour meñ of armes; and I hete zow, for to brynge to zour hande kyng 12 Darius, & þe maste parte of his oste.' And when Alexander had herde þis, he said vn-till hym. 'Frende,' quop he, 'I thanke þe mekill of thi faire promys. Neuer þe lesse, I late þe wite my meñ will nozte beleue þat pou wilt feghte agaynes thyñ owenñ 16 peple.' In þe mene tyme a Prynce of Darius oste sent vn-till hym a letter, of whilk þis was þe tenour.

Letter of
one of
Darius'
princes to
Darius be-
seeching
help.

* Leaf 17.

² 'To Darius, grete kyng of kynges, his lordes whilke he³ hase ordeyned cheftaynes vnder hym Sende z meke seruyce. Oftymes 20 be-fore this hafe we wreten to zour maieste, and now agayne we writte vn-to zow, & late zow wite þat þe macedoynes & kyng Alexander, as wode lyouns ere enterde* oure landez, and all oure strenthes, as a wilde raueschande beste he hase destroyed: 24 & oure knyghtes slayne. And oppressed we are wit so grete tribulacionns, þat we [may] na lengare suffre his mawgree, ne his malece bere. Where-fore, mekly we be-seke zour benyngne maiestee, þat ze wilt drawe to zoure mynde oure meke seruyce, 28 and swilke socoure vouchsaft to send' vs, þat we put off and agaynestande þe violence & þe malice of oure fore-said enemys.' When Darius had redde þis lettre, on ane he gert writte a lettir to kyng Alexander, sayand on þis wyse. 32

Darius to
Alexander,
reproach-
ing his vain
ambitions,
thanking

⁴ 'Daryus kyng of Perse and kyng of kynges, vn-to my seruande Alexander, I say. Now late þare es commenñ tiff oure eres tythynges; þat pou wenez to euenñ thi littilhede tiff oure heghe magnificence. Bot Sen it es impossible tiff a heuy asse, wit 36

¹ Three lines with miniature A and knight's head within.

² Three lines space with miniature T.

³ MS. repeats 'he' twice.

⁴ Three lines space with miniature D and a man's head within, much faded.

owtweð wenges, or oper instrumentez of flying, for to be lifte vp to þe sternes, late nozte thyñ hert be raysede to hye in pride for þe victories þat þou hase geteñ. We hafe wele herd tell þat þou hase done gentilly, and schewed grete humanitye till oure moder, oure wyfe, & oure childre, and þarefore I late þe wele wite þat, als lang als þou dose wele to þam, þou sañ fynde me nane enemy to the. And if þou do ill to þam þou sañ hafe þe enemytee of me, and þare-fore spare þam noghte, bot do to þam as þe liste. For somtyme þou sañ see & fele þe sentence of oure ire lighte apowñ thi heghe pride.' Whēñ Alexander hadd' redde þis *lettre* he wrate hym Anoper agayne whare-off þe tenour was this.

¹ Alexander þe soñ of Philippe & qwene Olympias to Darius kyng of Perse we write. Pride & vayne glorie hase oure goddez all way hated; and takez vengeance of dedly meñ þat takes apowñ þam þe name of immortalitee. Bot þou, als I wele see, cessez nozte zitt hider-to for to blasfeme in all þat þou may. Bot of that þat þou blamez me for þe benygnytes that I schewed þi moder, þi wyfe, & þi childre; þou ert moued on a lewed fantasye. For I late þe wele wyte, I did it nozte *for to be thanked of the, ne for to hafe thi Beneuolence þare-fore. Bot it come of a gentilnes of oure awenñ hert, fownded in vertu. Of thee victories also whilke þe forluke of godd' hase sent vs, ere we na-thing enpriddede. For we knawe wele þat oure goddis alway helpe vs, whilke þou ilk a daye dispysez & settez at nozte. And this sañ be þe laste letter þat I sañ writte vn-to þe. Beware if þou wif, For I say the sekerly, I come to þe onane.' Þis *lettre* gaffe Alexander to þe messangers of Darius and many grete giftez þare wit. Seyme,² he sent anoper *lettre*, till his prynee & his lordez, of þis tenour.

³ Alexander, þe soñ of Philippe & of þe quene Olympias vn-to þe prynee & þe lordez vnder our subieccioñ in Capadoce, In laodice, or ells whare duelland; gretyng, & gude grace. We charge þou & commandeþ þow straytly þat ilkan of þow ordayne vs in all þe haste þat þe may j^m nete-hydes barked; & send þam till Alexander, þat we and oure knyghtis may gere

him for his kindness to his wife and children, and enjoining him to continue his courtesy to them.

Alexander to Darius, reproaching him with assuming to himself the character of deity, spurning

* Leaf 17 bk.

his proffered thanks, and leaving the decision of the matter to the gods.

Alexander writes to his Lords, ordering commissariat materials.

¹ Three lines space, miniature A, with king's head (much faded).

³ MS. clearly reads *seyme*, it may be for 'seyine' (=seine).

² Four lines space, red capital A, much smudged; a small a written beside it in the margin.

make vs of þam clethyng, & schooes; And wit cameles þat 3e haue at Alexsander gerre cary þam to þe water of Eufrates.' In þis mene tyme a prynce of Darius, Nostande by name, wrate to Darius on þis wise.

One of his barons writes to Darius, telling of his own defeat and the treachery of others.

¹ 'To Darius þe wirchipfull grete godd' his seruande Nostand' law seruyce. Me aughte noȝte to sende swylk tythyng to 3our ryalle maiestee, bot grete nede gers me do it. Pare-fore be it knowē vn-to 3our hie lordchipe, þat twa grete prynceȝ of 3ours, & I, hase foghteñ wit kyng Alexander, And hym es fallen þe victorie, & slayne he hase thir twa worthy prynceȝ, & mekiñ oþer folke, and I fleed greuouly wounded. And many worthi knyghtis of 3ours hase for-saken 3our lordchipe & ioyned þam tiff Alexander oste, þe whilk he hase wirchipfully, and hase giffen grete lordchipes of 3ours.' And when Darius had redd' þis *lettre*, he sent in haste tiff Nostand, and commanded hym for tiff ordeyne a grete Oste; and manfully agaynstande þe folke of Macedoyne. He sent also a *lettre* to Porus kyng of Ynde, prayng hym to helpe hym agaynes Alexander, and Porus wrate agayne in þis manere.

Darius writes to him, ordering him to gather a great force, and to Porus, King of India, ask-
* Leaf 18.

ing help. Porus replies that he is at that time grievously sick, but that he will come as soon as possible with ten legions of knights.

² 'Porus, kyng of Ynde, vn-to Darius, kyng of Perse, gretynge. For þou hase prayed vs to come to the in helpynge *of³ the agaynes thyn enemys, we late the wete, þat we are redy & alwaye hase bene, for to com' to helpe 3ow. Bot as at þis tyme we are lettete to com' to 3ow, be-cause of grete seknesse þat we ere stadd' in, Neuēr þe lesse, sekerly, it es riȝte heuy vn-tiff vs, & greuou, vn-tiff [vs to] here of þe grete injury þat es done vn-tiff 3ow. And þarefore we late 3ow wite, þat wit-in schorte tym, we sall come for to helpe 3ow wit teñ legyouns of knyghtis.' Bot when Rodogorius, Darius moder, herd' tesse þat Darius hir soñ ordayned hym for to feghte agayne wit kyng Alexander scho was riȝte sory and wrote a *lettre* vn-tiff hym þat contened' this sentence.

Darius' mother writes to him, coun-

'To⁴ kyng Darius, hir moste biloued' son, Rodogorius, his modir sendeȝ gretynge & ioy. I hafe vnderstandeñ þat 3e hafe assemblede 3our meñ, & mekiñ oþer folke also, for to feghte

¹ Four lines with red capital T, much smudged; a small t written beside it in margin.

² Two lines with smudged capital P; a small p written in margin.

³ On leaf 17 of *be*, on leaf 18 of *the*.

⁴ *Rodorius* scratched out. Four lines with large capital T in red; small t in margin beside.

eftsones wit Alexander. Bot I late þe wite it wiþt availle þe
 nathynge. For þoghe 3e hadd^r gadirde to gedir alle þe meñ in
 þe werlde duellyng, 3it 3e ware vnable to agayne-stande hym.
 4 For þe foreluxe of godd^r mayntenez hym, & vphaldez hym. And
 þarefore dere soñ, it es my conseil, 3our heghēesse of herte
 3e lese, & fall sumwhate fra 3our glory, and bese fauorable to þe
 gretnes of Alexander. For better it es to forga þat at 3e may
 8 no3te halde, and haffe in pesse þan þat at 3e may halde, þan for
 too couett all and be excluded^r & for-ga all.' Wheñ Darius
 redde þis *lettre*, he was gretly troubled^r and weped^r bitterly,
 command^r vn-till his mynde, his moder, his wyf, & his childer.

12 ¹In the mene tyme kyng Alexander remowed^r his oste, and
 drew nere þe cite of Susis, in þe whilke Darius was lengand^r
 the same tyme, so þat he my3te see all þe heghe hille3 þat ware
 abownd^r þe citee. Þan Alexander commanded^r all his meñ, þat
 16 ilkañ of þam suld cutte dowñe a brawnche of a tree, and bere
 þam furth wit þam & dryfe bi-fore þam alle manere of beste3 þat
 þay my3te fynde in þe way. And when the Percyenes saw þam
 fra þe heghe hille3 þay wondred^r þam gretly. And Alexander come
 20 wit his oste to þe citee of Susis and lused hym nere besyde þe
 citee. And than he called^r his prynce3 & his oper lordez and
 said vn-to þam, 'Late vs,' quop he, 'send a messangere to kyng
 Darius & bidd^r hym² owþer & com feghte wit vs or effs *submyt
 24 hym vn-till vs.' The nexte nyghte after, Godd^r Amoñ apperede
 vn-till Alexander in his slepe bryngand^r hym þe figurre of Mercuri
 & a mantill, and anoþer manere of garment of Macedoyne, and
 saide vn-till hym. 'Alexander, soñ,' quop hee, 'euer mare wheñ
 28 þou hase nede, sañ I helpe the. And þarefore luke þou sende
 noghte to Darius þat messangere þat þou spake off. For I wiþt
 þat þou thi selfe clethe thee wit my figure & wende thedir þi
 selfe; if alle it be perilous for to do, Dred þe na thyng, for
 32 I sañ be thi helpe, so þat þou sañ hafe na maner of disesse.

On þe morne wheñ Alexander rase fra slepe, he was gretly
 comforthed^r of his dreame & called till hym his prynce3 and
 talde þam alle his dreame, and þay assentede alle, þat he schulde
 36 wende to Darius in his propir person. And onane he called^r vn-
 till hym ane of þe prince3, þe whilke highte Emulus. This

selling him
 to lower
 himself
 somewhat
 and yield
 to Alex-
 ander's
 greatness
 rather
 than
 lose all.

Alexander
 comes to
 Susa, driv-
 ing before
 him a
 crowd of
 beasts. He
 decides to
 send a mes-
 senger to
 Darius.

* Leaf 18
 bk.

The Vision
 of God
 Amon in
 the night,
 who tells
 Alexander
 to go
 alone to
 Darius in
 his figure.

¹ Four lines with large red capital I;
 small i written in margin.

² hym inserted afterwards in left-hand
 margin.

Alexander rides with a single knight to the River Granicus which was frozen over.

He will not allow his knight to fare further with him.

The river ever freezes in the night and thaws in the morning.

The Persians are amazed at him. Alexander comes to Darius and summons him to give tribute or fight.

prynce was a wyghte mañ, & an hardy & wonder trewe tiff Alexander. And þañ Alexander bad hym lepe one a horse, and brynge wit hym a noþer horse & folow hym. And he didd' so. And when þay come to gedir to þe water of Graunte, þat in þe langage of Perse es called' Struma, þay fande it frosen̄ ouer, and Alexander onane chaunged he¹ wede, & leste þe foresaid' prynce wit twa horse at þe water-syde and hym selfe, wit þe horse þat he satt apoñ, went ouer þe water apoñ þe Ys³, towarde þe citee of Susis. And his prynce besoghte hym þat he walde suffre hym wende wit hym, ne peraenture any disesse felle hym by þe waye. And Alexander ansuerd' & sayde, 'Habyde me here,' quop he, 'For he saff be my helpere, whaïñ in dremez I sawe appere vn-to me.' This ilke water I spake of bi-fore, aif þe wynter seson ilke a nyghte was frosen̄ aif ouer; bot tymely in þe mornynge als sone als þe warme soñ smate apoñ it, þañ it dissoluede agayne, & rañ wonder swiftly; þe brede of þat water es þe space of a furlange. When Alexander come to þe 3ate of þe citee the Perciens, when þay saw hym, hadd' grete wonder of his figure, and wend' he hadd' bene a godd; and onane þay asked' hym what he was? And he ansuerd; and said' he was a messangere sent fra kyng Alexander to þaire lorde Darius, and be-lyfe þay broghte hym til hym. Darius, when Alexander come bi fore hym, said vn-til hym. 'Whethyñ ert þou,' quop he? 'I ame,' quop Alexander, 'sent vn-to þe fra kyng Alexander to wiete where to þou taries to come tiff hym to gyffe hym batelle. Owthir come & feghte manfully wit thyne enemys or elis submitte þe tiff hym & * pay² hym tribute.'

* Leaf 19.

And Darius heard him and said, 'Art thou then the Alexander who with such madness shaped thy speech, for I see thou holdest thyself not from words as a messenger doth, but art bold as a king. Yet know that by thy words I am not frightened at all. Come dine with me this day.' And with these words, he reached out his hand to him and took him by his right, and led him into the palace. And Alexander, musing, began to say: 'A right good token hath this barbarian wrought me when he clasped my right hand and drew me into

¹ MS. reads 'he'. We ought perhaps to substitute 'his'.

² Pay him tribute is written at the

bottom of leaf 18; between that leaf and what is now leaf 19 a whole leaf is missing.

the palace, because, as the gods say sooth, ere long the palace shall be mine.' And going in, Darius and Alexander lay by a table, and the daintiest feast was laid out. And Darius' 4 marshall gazed hard at Alexander face to face. And the table was wreathed in cleanest gold. But the Persians, seeing Alexander's shape, yet knew nothing of what wisdom, doughtiness, and strength lurked in this small body. The dishes and tables 8 and seats were wrought of the finest gold. The cup-bearers bore cups in golden vessels and rarest jewels. And when a cup was handed to Alexander, he hid it in his breast. And another cup was brought to him and he did the same, and thus too with 12 a third. And those who bore the cups, seeing this, gave the news to the Emperor Darius. And he, hearing of it, rose up, saying: 'Friend, what is this that thou doest, hiding the cups in thy breast?' And Alexander: 'In our king's feasts the 16 guests are wont, whenever they will, to take their drinking-vessels. But, as this seemeth to you unworthy, I will give them back forthwith.' And with these words he gave them back to the cup-bearers. But the Persians who sate at the 20 feast said each to each, 'a good custom, indeed, and one to be praised.' And some lords, too, praised this way and exalted it. But one of the Princes of Darius, called Anapolus, sitting at the 24 feast, gazed hard at Alexander and his face. For he had seen him when, at Darius' bidding, he went into Macedonia to take tribute of Philip. He, knowing his voice and looking on his face, began to think to himself and say: 'Is this not Alexander?' And rising at once he drew near to Darius, saying: 28 'This messenger whom thou beholdest is Alexander, the son of Philip of Macedon.' And Alexander, seeing them with each other in talk, knew they were speaking of him and he was known. And at this he rose up from his place and leapt away 32 from the board. And taking a blazing torch from a Persian's hand, himself mounted his palfrey, which he found ready outside Darius's palace, and fled in the swiftest flight. And the Persians seeing this, taking weapons, mounted their steeds with 36 a mighty stir, and quickly followed after Alexander. And in the darkness of the nightfall, they began to stray, some scratched their faces by the tree-boughs, some falling into ditches. But Alexander, bearing his blazing torch in hand, fared straight

The Feast of Darius and its magnificence.

Alexander hides the golden cups in his breast. Darius chides him. Alexander answers by giving them to the cup-bearers.

Alexander is recognized by one who had been in Macedon. He tells Darius.

Alexander flees away and is pursued by the Persians. He escapes in the darkness.

Darius on his throne sees the golden image of Xerxes break, which fore-tokens the end of the Persian Empire. Alexander swims the river, but his horse is lost.

forward. Now, Darius sate on his throne and thought of Alexander and how great his daring was. He saw a statue of gold of Xerxes the Persian king, who sate below the high-seat in the hall. And at once the statue broke and was all scattered 4
asunder. And Darius seeing this was smitten with heaviness of heart and began to weep sorely and long. And he said: 'This foretokeneth the wasting of my life, and the utter downfall of the Persian kingdom.' Alexander, however, coming to 8
the river Grancus, found it swollen, and leapt athwart it. But ere he was over the stream burst its banks, and swept his horse away; with great hardship Alexander escaped and met Eumulus, his lord. And thus he went back to his army and 12
told them of Darius, how he had dealt with him, and the torch with which he had fled away.

HOW ALEXANDER PUT HEART INTO HIS HOST ANEW.

Alexander gathers his army.

And on the following day, he gathered his army, which told two hundred and twenty thousand of weaponed men. And 16
he went up

* * * * *

* Leaf 19. Alexander's harangue to his men, telling them to have trust in their own bravery.

* on a hye place & comforthed his meñ and said vn-to þam: 'þe multitude of þe percienes,' quop he, 'may no3te be euent to þe multitude of þe greckes. For sewrly we are ma þan þay. And 20
if þay were ane hundreth sythes maa then wee, late no3te 3our hertis faile 3ow þarefore. For I telle 3ow a grete multitude of flyes may do na harme till a fewee waspes.' And when þe Oste had herde thire wordes þay commendide hym halelely wit a 24
voyce.

Darius crosses the river Grancus with a mighty army and meets Alexander in battle.

¹ Than þe emperour Darius remowed his oste, and come to þe reuere of Graunt on þe nyghte, and went ouer on þe ys3, and þar he lugged hym. The Oste of Darius was wonder grete and 28
strange. For þay hadd^r in þaire oste X^m cartes ordaynd^r For þe werre, and grete multitude of Olyfante3, wit towres of tree on þam, stuffed wit fehtyng meñ. And sone after apponð a day thir twa kynges wit þaire oste3 mett sameñ 32
on a faire felde, Darius wit his meñ, and Alexander wit his men.

¹ Four lines with large cursive ornamental T of new type and decorative style.

Than Alexander lepte apoū his horse, þat highte Buctiphalas, and rade furthe bi-fore āff his oste, and houed in þe myddes waye bi-twene þe twa osten. And when̄ þe Percyenes saw hym, 4 þay had grete wonder of hym, and ware riȝte ferde for hym, by cause he was so vggly. Neuere-þe-lesse þay tromped vp & went to-warde Alexander. And sone þe bateīf ioyned, & faghte to-gedir fersely, and many men̄ dyed on ayther party; þare was so 8 thikke schott of arowes, þat þe ayer was couerde, as it had bene wit a clowde. Some faghte wit swerdeȝ, sum wit speres, sum wit axes, & sum̄ wit arowes. Þe felde lay full of folke, sum̄ dede, sum̄ halfe-dede, & sum̄ greuously wounded. Thay began̄ 12 for to feghte at þe soũ-rysyng, and faghte to þe soũ-setting. Bot þare dyed many ma of þe Percyenes þan þare dide of Macedoyns.

And when̄ Darius sawe his men̄ falle so thikke in þe felde, he 16 lefte þe felde, and fledd; and þe Percyenes seyng that, þay fledd also. Bot þan̄ þaire cartes of werre rane amange þe Percyens & slewe of þan̄ folke wit-owte nowmer & namely of fote-men̄. For by þat tyme it was myrke nyghte, and þay ne myȝte noȝte see 20 for till eschewe þan̄. When̄ Darius come* to the foresaid watre he fande it frosen̄, and ouer he went. And when̄ he was ouer, þe oper lordes of perse went apoū þe ysȝ, so grete a multitude þat þay couerde þe ysȝ fra þe taa banke to þe toper, 24 & þat a grete brede, & þan̄ onane þe ysȝ brake als sone als Darius was paste ouer, & āff þat ware on þe ysȝ ware perischte, ilk a moder soũ, & drowneded in þe water. Þe remanaunt, when̄ þay come to the water, þay myȝte noȝte wynd ouer. And þan̄ þe 28 Macedoynes come, & dange þan̄ downe. In this bateīf þare was slaen of þe Percyenes cccc̄m wit-owten̄ thase þat were drowneded.

Kyng Darius fledd to þe citee of Susis, & went in till his 32 palace, & felle downe to þe grounde, & sigheand & wepande wit a sare hert, he said̄ this wordes: 'Allas, full wa es me, vnhappye wriche, þat euer I was borne, for þe ire & þe indignaciõ of heuen̄ es fallen̄ one mee. For I Darius þat liste 36 my seluen̄ vp to þe sternes, Now am I broghte lawe to þe erthe. Now es Darius, þat conquerede āff þe Este nacyons, & made þan̄ subiecte & tributaries vn-till hym, fayne for to flee fra his enemys and submytte hym vn-to þan̄. And it ware

Alexander mounts Bucephalus and rides between the two armies. The Persians are afraid of his ugliness. The battle begins and lasts the day. The Persians lose more than the Greeks.

Darius flees and his flight causes the confusion of his army.

*Leaf 19 bk.

He crosses the ice, but his Lords are drowned in its breaking.

Darius flees to the city of Susa. He bewails his lot, for he is fallen from his greatness. He moralizes on the present and future lives, and quotes sacred passages.

knaweñ vn-to þe wreched mañ, what schulde falle tiif hym after-warde3, he schulde hafe littiif thoughte of þe tyme presentt, bot one þe tyme to come solde his tho3te be. In a poynte of a daye it falles, þat þe meke es raysede vp to þe clowdde3, and þe 4 prowde es putt to no3te.' And wheñ he hade saide thir wordes, he rase vp, & satt & wrate a *lettre* vn-till Alexander, sayande on this wyese.

He writes to Alexander.

He praises the great wisdom of Alexander, who even knows what is to come.

Nevertheless he reminds him of his earthly birth, and warns him against pride. For often the end of a man ill accords with the beginning. Hereminds him of the fate of Xerxes.

Darius demands his mother, wife, and children, offering therefor his treasure and the kingship over the Medes and Persians.

¹ 'Tiif his lorde Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, Darius, kyng 8 of Perse, gretyng & Joy. We hafe wele vnderstanden by þat that we hafe herde of 3owe and sene, þat 3e hafe in 3ow grete wysedonñ & a hye witt: so þat no3te allanly 3e knawe thynges þat are present or passede, bot also thynges þat ere 12 for to come, and þare-fore all thynges, þat 3e doo: 3e do it wit-owteñ any lakke or repreue. Neuer-þe-lesse hafe3 in mynde þat ri3te as wee ware, so ware 3e geteñ & borne of a fleschly womañ. And þare fore rayse no3te 3our herte to hye 16 bi-cause of 3our prowesche & 3our doghty dedis, so þat 3e forgete 3our laste ende. For ofte tymes we see þat þe lattere end of a mañ discordes wit þe firste. It suffice3 tiif a wer-ryoure for to gete þe victorye of his enemys, þofe all he 20 schewe no3te alle þe malice þat he may. Remembre 3ow of þe wirchipfull kyng 3erses oure progenytour, þat many victoryes gatt & schane in alle prosperiteez, Be-fore he rayseð his hert in pride passande mesure. Alle þe wirchippe þat he hadd 24 wonñ be-fore, he loste in Ellada, þare-fore remembre 3ow, þat all þe wirchipes & þe victoryes þat 3e hafe geteñ by þe forluke of 3 godd'

* * * * *

ye got this victory. To us then who beseech grant your 28 mercy. Yield us our mother, our sons, and wife, and we will render unto you the treasures we have in Aydem and Susa and Batram, the which our fathers hoarded and hid in earthen cellars. And we will give you the kingship of the Medes and 32 Persians, that thus ye may have and keep what victory Jove the all-mighty hath granted you.'

¹ Four lines space with decorated miniature T.

² 'by þe forluke of godd' is written at the bottom of leaf 18 bk. Between this leaf and what is now numbered leaf 20

a whole leaf is missing; and we are plunged into the middle of quite a different letter of Darius on leaf 20, which is addressed to Porus.

HOW THE MESSENGERS OF DARIUS GAVE ALEXANDER THE LETTER, AND HIS ANSWER.

The messengers of Darius coming then to Alexander gave him the letter, which Alexander read soon before them all. Then one of his chieftains, called Parmerion, said to Alexander :
4 'Most mighty emperor, take all the wealth which Darius covenants unto thee, and give back to him his wife and sons.'
And, hearing this, Alexander called to him the messengers of Darius, and before all spoke thus, saying: 'Tell ye to your
8 emperor we wonder first that he misdeemed his mother, wife, and sons to be betrayed by our hands. If he be overcome, bid him not promise us a reward. If he bow himself to our yoke, all his honours and the majesty of God shall be laid
12 bare to our sway. If he be not overcome, let him do us battle once again.' This said, he gave them rich gifts and sent them forth away. Then he bade the soldiers take up and gather the bodies of the dead and bury them in graves :
16 and he bade them heal those that were wounded.

A noble of Alexander counsels him to accept these terms. But he will not. But bids Darius either submit himself or do battle.

He orders the dead to be buried.

HOW ALEXANDER ENCAMPED BY THE STREAM GRANCUS.

Then he encamped with his host by the stream of Grancus, and wintered there some days. And there he offered up victims to the gods. And about the river there were palaces,
20 and they were the fairest, raised up with greatest skill, and Xerxes the King of the Persians had built them. Alexander, seeing them, bade them be burned. And soon after this, stirred by ruth, he gave word none should dare touch them.
24 And there too was a most fair and very wide field in which the Kings and Deemsters of Persia were of old buried. And digging into this field the Macedonians found in the graves gemmed vases. And there they found the grave of Ninus the
28 King of Assyria and Persia, which was hollowed out of a single amethyst, and engraven on the outside with palm-leaves and sundry kinds of birds. And so bright was the amethyst that even from the outside the man's body appeared whole.
32 And in this place was a narrow and evil tower on which stood many men, some with cut legs, some with broken thighs, some with torn hands, and some blinded. They hearing

He encamps with his army by the Grancus and sacrifices.

Alexander commands the palaces to be burnt.

The burying-place of the Kings and Judges of Persia, wherein treasure is found. The grave of Ninus and its wonders. The Tower of the Maimed Men.

They be-
seech
mercy of
Alexander,
who re-
stores them
to their
own.
For they
were nobles
dispossess-
ed by
Darius.

the noise of the armed men cried out to Alexander, who hearing their cries, bade them be taken thence. And seeing them was struck with ruth and wept, and bade each one be given ten thousand drachmas, and be restored every one to 4 his own. For Darius kept them in prison, since they were of noble birth, and awarded all their possessions to his thralls. In the meantime the messengers from Alexander to Darius told all that Alexander had said. And Darius hearing this 8 began to get ready for the fight. And he wrote another letter to Porus King of India, which runneth as follows:—

Darius'
letter to
Porus,
King of
India.

THE LETTER SENT BY DARIUS TO PORUS KING OF
INDIA.

He asks
him again
for help
against
Alexander,
since he
has re-
solved to
fight to the
very death.
For it is
better to
die in the
field than to
see the end
of his king-
dom and
people.

‘Darius King of the Persians to Porus King of Our Indians joy. We asked but lately of you, and again we ask you to 12 come and help against those who strive to overthrow our palace. We know well also that the like harm will light on you. For this Alexander, who fighteth thus, hath an un- quenched and wild soul, which like a lion ceaseth not, and 16 is like the sea when stirred by mighty winds. Furthermore, unwillingly though it be, we have gathered numberless races, and we have taken our counsel to fight with him to the very death.

20

* Leaf 20.

Darius
writes to
Porus to
succour
him for the
sake of
himself, his
dynasty,
and his
people,
promising
him help
and the
spoils of
Alexander.
He warns
him that as
Alexander
had done
to him, so
would be
done to
Porus.

* better vs es for to dy manly in þe felde þan for to see þe mescheffe of oure pople & þe dissolacioñ of oure rewme. Wherefore, hafand' reward' and compassioñ of oure disesse, we be-seke 3ow, þat 3e late oure prayeres sattell' in 3our hert, 24 & helpe for to succour vs now at oure nede, hafand' in 3oure mynde þe grete noblaye of oure progenytours. And I seure 3ow þat [I sall] giffe ilke a fote-mañ þat come3 wit 3ow, thre pece3 of golde, And ilke a horse-mañ, fyve pece3 of golde, 28 And also mete & drynke ynoghe to 3ow & aif 3our meñ. And whare so 3e lugge 3ow, we schaffe fynde 3ow a hundreth & fourscore tentes curyously wroghte. And also we schaff giffe 3ow Alexander horse Buktyphalas, and aife appairaitf, 32 & þe araye þat langes tiff Alexander hallely schaff be 3ours and also aif þe spoylle of his folke saif be dalte amange3 3oure folke. Wherefore we beseke 3ow þat also soñ als this

lettre comme; to 3ow, 3e haste 3ow tiff vs in aft pat 3e may.
 For wite 3e wele for certayne, that rihte als he done tiff
 vs, so he purpose hym in tyme comynge for to do to 3owe.
 4 ¹In the men tyme, certane meñ of Darius went fra hym
 & come tiff Alexander, & talde hym, pat Darius purposede
 hym for to feghte wit hym eftesones, and had sent tiff Porus,
 kyng of Inde, for to come in grete haste, for to helpe hym.
 8 When Alexander herd þis, be-lyfe he remowed his Oste to
 ward Darius, thynkand in his herte pat he wolde on na wyse
 take apoñ hym þe name of Emperour be-fore he hadd wonñ
 Darius and his rewme one werre. And when Darius herde
 12 of þe comyng of Alexander, he dredd hym gretly & þe
 Percyenes also. Bot þare was two prynce; of Darius, of þe
 whilke þe tane highte Bisso & þe toper Ariobarsantes, thir
 twa when pair ²herd of þe comyng of Alexander, conspyred
 16 to-gedir for to slaa þaire lord Darius, supposyng for tiff hafe
 a grete thanke of Alexander, and a gret reward for þaire dede.
 And ayther of þañ ware sworne tiff oper. And thañ they
 went to þe kynges palace, and come intiff his chamber wit
 20 drawen swerdes in þaire handez, and fand Darius bi hym
 ane. And when Darius saw that, he trowed wele pat þay
 wolde sla hym, And said vn-to þañ: 'Dere frende; hedir
 to wardez hafe I called 3ow my seruaunde; bot now I call 3ow
 24 my lordes. What ayles 3ow at me pat 3e wiñ sla me? Haes
 Alexander cheriste þe macedoynes mare þañ I hafe done 3ow?
 Hafe I nozte sorow & disese ynoghe of enemyse wit-owtten?
 Bot if 3e conspire agaynes me for to sla me wit owtten gilt,
 28 I say for sothe, & 3e sla me * thus preuelye, And Alexander
 may gete 3ow, he wiñ take mare cruell vengeance one 3ow, then
 on any theues. For sothely it es na comforthe ne lykyng tiff
 ane Emperour to fynd an oper Emperour murthered wit his awen
 32 meñ.' Bot þay were na-tyngne stirrede to petee, ne tendernesse,
 ne mercy, thurgh his wordez, Bot went tiff hym and wit grete
 cruelnesse smate hym, & al-to magle hym, and went faste þaire
 waye, & lefte hym for dede.
 36 ³And when Alexander herd tell pat Darius was slayne he

Alexander hearing of this through treachery marches against Darius.

Two nobles of Darius conspire to slay him that they may have reward of Alexander.

Darius seeing them begs for mercy, and foretells the future vengeance of Alexander. But they slay him.

* Leaf 20 bk.

Alexander hearing of

¹ Five lines space with a capital I.

² MS. *pair* for *þay*, just as on leaf 34, l. 23. Cf. Icelandic *þeir*. There is no mis-

take here, as the two spellings vary *þaire* and *þair* on leaves 34, 54.

³ Four lines with red capital A.

his death enters Susa without resistance. The conspirators hide themselves.

Alexander goes to the room where Darius lies dying.

Alexander has pity on Darius and promises him all he once had if he will but live.

Alexander says he would rather give his own Empire to Darius than behold him dead.

* Leaf 21.

Darius embraces Alexander.

Darius' speech to Alexander on the worthlessness and unsteadfastness of

went ouer þe water of Graunt, and all his Oste wit hym, and come to þe cetee of Susis. And alsone als þe Percyenes saw hym, Thay Opened þe zates of þe citee, & rescheyued hym wit grete wirchipe. And when þe pryncez þat slewe Darius wiste 4 þat Alexander was comen id-to þe citee þay went & helde þam in hidils ay tiff þay myzte gete knoweinge of Alexander wiff, as towchand þat that þay hadd done to Darius. Alexander þam went in-to þe kynges Palace, and as he went þare-in he 8 merueyled hym gretly of þe biggyng þare-off. For Cirus þe kyng of Perse gert bigg it ryally. And the pament þareoffe was made of stanes of dyuerse colours, & þe walles all enueround wit fyne golde & precyous stanes & sternes lyke to þe firmament, 12 and pelers of golde þat bare vp þe werke. When Alexander saw all this curious werke, he meruailed hym gretly. And than he went to þe chambre þare Darius laye halfe dede. And alsone als he saw hym he hadd grete rewthe & compassion 16 of hym, and he tuke off his awenid mantill & couerd [hym] þare-wit, & went and graped his wondes and wepid for hym rixt tenderly, & said un-til hym. 'Rise vp, sir Darius,' quop he, ' & be of gude comforthe. And als frely as euer þou reioysede thy 20 Empire, so mot þou zitt do, And be als myghty, & als gloryouse als euer þou was. I swere the here by oure myzty goddes & by þe faythe in my body, þat here I resigne vn-to the all thy 24 empyre, desyrand souerayngly for to hafe þe lyfe of the, as þe son of 1 þe Fader, For sekerly it es vnfitand & unsemly tiff ane emperour for to be reioysede of an oper emperours mescheffe & disesse, when fortune hase forsaken hym. Telle me, sir, what þay are þat hase thus faren wit the, and I sewre þe als I am 28 trew man I sail venge the to þe uttereste.' And * when Alexander had said this & mekiff mare, Sare wepand Darius putt furthe his hande, and layde his arme abowte Alexander nekke, and kyssed his breste, his nekke, & his hande, & saide 32 thir wordez, thare that here folowes. 2 'A, dere son Alexander,' quop he, 'als thi heghe witt knowes wele, all this werlde es corrupt and sett in malice. For þe souerayne forluke of godd, all thynges knowande fra þe begynnyng, and hafand felyng 36 of þe wirkynges for to come, made man in that wyse, at þe

¹ þe is written in above the line in the MS.

² Four lines miniature with ornamented red capital A.

begynnyng, þat nathing es in hym stable ne faste. So þat all
 thynges þat ere passande & werldely, fra þat he faile of
 gouernance, tournes alsoñ till hym in contrarye. For if godd'
 4 hadd' ordeyned' all thynges esy to mañ and alwaye wit-owtten
 chaungynge sent hym prosperitee, mañ schulde be lyftede vp
 so hie in pryde & in vayne glorye, þat he solde nozte arett affe
 his wele-fare & his welthe vn-to godd', bot till his awennñ desert
 8 & his awennñ vertu. And so schulde meñ gaa fra þaire makare.
 On þe toper syde if þe heghe wyssedomñ of godd' hadd' made
 þe werlde oñ þat wyse þat all illes and infelicytes fell apouñ mañ
 wit-owtten any maner of gudenesse, so many freletese sulde folow
 12 þe kynde of mañ, þat we schulde all be drawen in-to þe gilder
 of disparacionñ, so þat we solde hafe na triste in þe gudnes of
 godd'. And þarefore grete godd' wolde so wisely skifte all
 thynges, þat, whenñ a mañ full of felicitee, thurgh his heghe
 16 pride will nozte knawe his makere, Fra þe heghte of pride in-to
 þe pitte of mekenes & lawnes he moñ be plungeded. So þat he
 þat thurgh pride & felice forgatt his godd', thurgh fallynge in
 wrechidnesse & disesse hafe mynde of his godd'. Reghte als þou
 20 may see bi me, my dere soñ Alexander, þat was raysede vp so
 hye in pride & vayne glorye, thurgh reches & prosperitee þat
 felle vn-to me, þat I trowed nozte þat I was goddes creature
 bot goddes Felawe. And þañ, thurgh blyndenes of pride,
 24 I couthe nozte see that, þat now, thurgh scharpenesse of mekenes
 and mescheffe, I see clerely & knawes. Bot if it happenñ þat any
 mañ be vmbilappede wit grete infelicitee, so þat he, despairand'
 of þe grace of godd', supposse na remedy, ne nane lukes eftere;
 28 * þañ oure lorde godd' raysez hym vp to þe heghte of prosperitee,
 so þat þañ he, þat bi-cause of wrechidnes & infelicitee, myzte
 nozte see godd' ne knawe hym, thurgh felice & prosperitee
 knawes þat he, þat may bryng a mañ to lawe state, may rayse
 32 a mañ till heghe degree. And he þat may rayse a mañ till
 heghe degree, may putt hym to lawnesse agayne, whenñ hym lyst,
 and þare-fore, soñ, late nozte thy hert ryse to hye in pride, for þe
 victoryes þat godd' hase sent the, if all þou may do now whate þe
 36 list ryzt as [¹ þou] were a godd'. Bot alway thynke on thy laste
 ende. For þou ert a dedly mañ, and ilk a day if þou be-halde
 graythely þou may see thy dedd' bi-fore thyñ eghne. Consedirs

all earthly
things,

with particu-
lar
application
to him-
self.

On the pre-
sumption
of those
who have

* Leaf 21
bk.

great
wealth.

On the
power of
God to put
down the
mighty
from their
seats, and
to lift up
them of
low degree.

¹ þou may have been left out by the scribe beginning a new line.

Darius asks burial of Alexander, and that both peoples should comethere-to. And wills there-to that both empires be one. He bids him be merciful to his widow, and take his daughter Roxana to wife. He dies.

Alexander buries Darius in royal state. He bears the bier himself. The Macedonians and the Persians go before it. Alexander seats himself on the

* Leaf 22.

throne of Cyrus, and is crowned with the crown of Darius.

The throne of seven steps with its mystic meanings inwrought.

pou noȝte how oure lyffe may be lykkened to þe werke of Eranes, þat so sotelly makes þaire webbes? Bot alsoñ als a little blaste of wynde puffes apoñ þam, þay breke, & falles to grownde. Behalde & see how glori^{us} I was ȝisterday & how wrechede I am 4 to-day, & how law I am broghte. I was lorde nerehande of all þe werlde, & now I hafe na power of myñ awenð selfe. Now I be-seke the, soñ, þat þou wilt bery me wit thy benynge handes. And suffre for to come to myñ exequise bathe 8 þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes. And fra this tyme forwardeȝ, þe empire of Macedoyne & þe empire of perse be bathe ane. Haffe recomend vn-to the my Moder Rodogoñ, & trete hir wirchipfully as thyñ awenñ Moder. And I be-seke þe also, 12 þat þou be Mercyable to my wyfe. And if ¹ it be lykyng to þe, take Rosañ my dogheter to thi wyfe. For semely it es, þat ȝe be ioynede to-geder þat er comenð of so wirchipfull progenitours, For þou of kyng Philippe, and scho of kyng Darius. And of 16 ȝow twa may a wirchipfull & a noble fruyte sprynge.' And riȝte as he had saide thir wordeȝ he swelt in Alexander armes. Kyng Alexander, þañ, after þe customð was for to bery emperours, gert araye Darius body als ryally as he couthe. 20 And wit all þe solempnyte and wirchipe þat myghte be done, he helped hym selfe for to bere þe bere, sare wepande, and gert þe Macedoynes & þe Percyenes gaa bi-fore þe bere. The persyenes also weped wonder faste, noȝte allanly for þe dede 24 of Darius, bot for petee of þaire hertis, þat þay saw Alexander wepe so enterely. And when Darius was beried Alexander went agayne to þe palace.

² And one þe morne Alexander went and sett hym in a trone 28 all of golde & precyous stanes, the whilke Cyrus sumtyme gert * make þat was kyng of Perse. And the Macedoynes and þe Persyenes sett apoñ his hede a coroune þat was Darius, þe whilke was so precious, þat meñ knewe nane like it in na lande. ȝ2 For all þe palace schane thurgh bryghtness of þe precyous stanes, þat were sett þare-in. And þe trone was all of golde, & of precious stanes, & of þe seȝe þare-offe was vii seuen³ cubeteȝ heȝhe fra þe grounde, and a grece of seuen greeȝ was made ȝ6

¹ it written in above by the scribe.

² Two lines space with miniature A.

³ 'vii' occurs at the end of one line, and 'seven' at the beginning of the next.

pare-to, whare-by kynges ascended pare-to. And thir gree were made wonder craftly & curiously. The firste gree was of ane amatist. The seconde gree was of a Smaragd. The thredd¹ 4 gree was of a Topaz. The ferthe gree was of a granat. The fifte was of ane adaman^d. The sext was of fyn golde. And the seuent was of clay. And thay ware nozt ¹[wit-o]wtten grete cause; ordeyned one bis wyse.

8 For pe first gree w[as a]ne² amatist, for amange all oper stanes it hase this vertu, that it represses & haldez donne pe fumositee of wyne & pe myghte pare-offe, & suffers nozte a man pat bere it³ on hym be troubled in his witt ne in his mynde 12 thurgh drownkeness. And, on pe same wise, solde ilke a kyng be of perfite witt & mynde, & thurgh nane occasion do na mysse. The secun^d gree was of a Smaragd, pe whilke clarifyez & kepez pe sighte of hym pat beres [it] apouⁿ hym, and so schulde 16 a kyng hafe clere sighte of his hert, wysely for to see & discerne that pat es spedfull & profitable bathe for hym selfe & for pe comon profit. The thirdd¹ gree was of a Topaz, pe whilke es so clere, pat & a man bi-halde hym selfe pare-in, it sail seme 20 till hym, as his hede ware tournede downward, and his fete vpward; And it be-takenes pat a kyng schulde alway take hede till his laste ende. The ferthe gree was of a Granat whilk passez all manere of precious stanes in reedness: & betakens 24 pat a kyng suld be schamfull for till consent till any thyng pat es vnlesfull. The fifte was of ane Adamande. Pe Adamande es so harde pat it may nozte be broken nowper with yren ne wit stane, bot if it firste be enoynted wit gayte blode. On pe same 28 wyse a kyng suld be of so grete constance & sadnesse pat, for na prayere, ne for na worldely gude, he solde nozte bewgh fra pe way of ryght-wisnesse. The sexte gree was of fyne gold: for rihte as gold passez all maner of metalle in bewtee, & in pre- 32 cioustee; rihte so a kyng awe to be⁴ preferred before oper men & gouernours of paⁿ. * Pe seuent was of Clay, till pat entent pat a man pat es raysed vp to pe dingnyte of a kyng sulde alway vmbythynk hym pat he was made of erthe, & at pe laste

The first step of amethyst, that a king be not drunken but walk soberly and steadfastly. The second of emerald, that a king see well those things which belong to his rank.

The third of topaz, which reminds him of his latter end, showing him upside down.

The fourth of garnet, which makes him shame to do unlawfully.

The fifth of diamond, which means that a king should be righteous. The sixth of gold, to show the greatness of kings.

* Leaf 22 bk.

The seventh of clay, to

¹ Piece gone in MS. Reads —witten. The beginning of a w occurs before the hole, and the latter half of an o after it—so it must clearly be read 'witowitten'.

² MS. w and a gap follows as above;

read, of course, 'was a-'.
³ it written in above line.

⁴ MS. has in another hand in bottom of margin 'preferred before' written over again.

show him
above all
he is but
dust and
deathly.

Alex-
ander's
letter to all
lands—ann-
ouncing
that he sits
on the
throne of
Darius.
He orders
that all
things
should be
as they
were
before.

He com-
mands
security of
tenure to
all, and free
trade be-
tween
Hellas and
all Persia.
Alexander
promises a
fitting re-
ward to
them that
slew
Darius.

They de-
clare them-
selves.

* Leaf 23.
Alexander
bids them
be taken

to þe erthe he saff agayne. When Alexander was sett apou this trone, coronnde wit his diademe, & þe Macedoynes & þe persenes standyng abowte hym: be-fore þam alle he gert write a lettre till all cuntreez, þat was of this tenour. 4

¹ Alexander the son of godd Amou & qwene Olympias kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes, till alle Dukes, Pryncez, Erles, Baronns, maisters, & till all þe folkez of Perse: ioy & grace. Sen it es plesynge to godd, þat I sitt one þe trone of Darius, & be 8
lorde of þe persyenes, grete cause I hafe for to be reioyist gretely þare-offe, ne were it for þe gret multitude of folke þat ere slayne. Bot sen it so es þat godd hase ordeynede me to be 3our 12
lorde,² and 3our gouernour, þare-fore we commande 3ow þat in ilke a citee, thurghowte þe lordchipe of Perse, 3e ordeyne prynce3 and gouernours as þare was in Darius tyme, to þe 16
whilke we commande 3ow þat 3e be obeyande as 3e before-tymes hafe bene, and that þay do ri3te till ilke a mañ at þaire powere. Also it es oure will and oure commandement, þat ilke a mañ 20
welde & reioyse paysably his landes and his possessiouns. We commande also, þat fra this lande of perse vn-till Ellada, & fra thethyñ to Macedoyne, be redy way & opeñ so þat ilke a mañ 20
þat will may passe bathe in and owte, wit merchandyse or any oper erandes þat þay hafe at do, and Joy & pese be vn-to 3owe.'

³ Pan gert Alexander all meñ be still, and said one this wyse: 'Whilke of 3ow so slew myñ enemy Darius; come3 forthe be-for 24
me, and I shall giffe 3ow worthy mede, & conable wirchipe do þam, I swere bi oure godde3 þat ere Almy3ty, & bi my moste biloved moder Olympias, þat I saff gyffe þam worthy mede.' When Alexander had saide thir wordes þe persyenes wepede 28
wonderly sare. And thañ þe twa mañ-morthireres Bisso and Aryobarzantes come bi-fore Alexander, and sayde vn-till hym: 'Wirchippull emperour,' quop þay, 'we ere thase þat slew 32
Darius thyne enemy wit oure Awenñ hende.' And when Alexander saw þam, he bade his knyghtes belyfe ga & take þam, & bynde * þam, & lede þam to Darius grafe, & þare smyte of þaire heuedes. And thañ þay ansuerd, & saide vn-till Alexander: 'A, A, wirchippull emperour,' quop þay, 36

¹ Ten lines blank space for a miniature.
² In MS. between 'be 3our lorde' and
and 3our gouernour' is written '& lorde

of þe persyenes', but it has been erased by
the scribe.

³ Three lines space with red capital þ.

'swore þou nozte tiff vs, bi oure godde; þat ere Almyzty, & bi þe hele of thi moder Olympias, þat þou solde gerre do vs na harme, bot þat þou solde giff vs a worthi reward.' And

4 Alexander saide agayne vn-to þam: 'So aughte me wele for to swere, for to gette knawying of þe slaers of Darius. For I solde neuer hafe getyñ knawying þare-offe had I nozte sworne so. And zitt I sall safe myñ athe wele ynoghe. For it was al-way myñ

8 entent, þat if I myzte wete what þay ware, þay solde hafe swilke a rewarde. For þay þat slaes þaire awenñ lorde it es a taken þat þay wiff hafe na conscience to sla anoþer mañ.' And when þe perseyenes herde this þay by-gañ to prayse Alexander

12 & to commende hym and blysse hym as he had bene a godd. þam kyng Alexander gert hede tha twa homycydes. And all þe rewme he sett in gouernance of certayne lordes. Amanges oþer þare was ane alde lorde was eme to Darius, þe whilke

and be-headed. They plead his own words. But it avails them nought.

16 highte Climitus, þat was gretly luffede wit þe persyenes; And Alexander at þe request of all the persyenes ordeyned hym for to be chefe gouernour vnder hym of all perse. And one þe morne Alexander sett hym in his trone, wit his corouñ on his hede,

They are slain. Alexander makes Darius' uncle governor of the Persians.

20 and efter þe biddynng of Darius he commande to brynge bi-fore hym Rosañ, Darius doghter, wit a corouñ oñ hir hede, sett full of precious stanes. And þare, as þe maner was of þe persyenes, he tuke hir to his wyfe, and made hir to sitt wit hym in his

Alexander weds Roxana, Darius' daughter.

24 þam þe persyenes were wonderly glade, & onane þay brozte þaire godde; bi-fore Alexander, and bi-gañ to wirchipe hym, & loue hym rihte als he hade bene a godd, and said vn-till hym,

The Persians worship Alexander as a god.

28 hallely wit a voyce, 'þou thi selfe es a godd, For that þat es plesande tiff oure goddes alway þou dose.' And when Alexander saw this, he was gretly troubled & rihte ferde & said vn-to þam: 'Wirchipfull sirs,' quop he, 'I pray zow þat ze

32 wirchipe me nozte as a godd, for sothely I am as ze are, a corupteble & a dedly mañ, and in me þare es na parcell of the godhede. And þarefore, I beseke zow, cessez of this wirchipe þat ze do me.'

He chides them for it.

36 ¹ þan gert Alexander write a lettre tiff Olympias his moder & tiff Arestotle his maister, makand mencyoñ of all þe batayffs & þe dissesz þat he hadd suffred in Perse, and of þe grete rechis

Alexander writes to his mother. and to Aristotla.

¹ Five lines with large capital þ.

He com-
*Leaf 23
bk.
mands an
eight days'
feast for
the mar-
riage.
Alexander
marches
against
Porus of
India,
through
waste
country,
with great
rivers and
caverns.
The Mace-
donians
murmur at
the con-
tinued
wars and
marches,
and against
Alex-
ander's
ambition.
They fain
would
leave him.

King Alex-
ander
divides the
Mace-
donians
and the
Persians.

Alexander
rebukes the
Greeks
that they
would
leave him
alone with
rebellious
Persians.
He reminds
them of
what he
has done

pat he fandē pare, of þe whilke he & all his meñ ware made riche. And also he wrate vn-to þam, * þat þay scholde make grete solempnytee lastyng aghte dayes be-cause of þe weddyng of Alexander & Rosañ Darius daughter. And so did Alexander, 4 in Perse, wit þe macedoynes & þe persyenes, many a daye.

¹ After this kyng Alexander ssembled a grete Oste, bathe of macedoynes & of persyenes, and went towarde Inde for to werre apoñ Porus, kyng of Inde, þe whilke ordeynede hym for to 8 come & helpe kyng Darius. And, when Alexander was entered in-till Inde, he went thurgh wildernes & waste cuntree, whare in ware grete reuers and many grete caues & cauernes. And þañ Alexander & his meñ wex wery, & irkede riȝte sare. And 12 þe prynces of macedoynne & of grece murmourede amangeþ þam gretly, & saide ilkañ till oþer: 'It myȝte hafe sufficed till vs, þat we hafe ouer-sett kyng Darius, & conqerred þe kyngdom of Perse. Where-be seke we forthire in-till Inde, þe whilke es 16 full of wilde besteȝ, and leues oure awenñ landeȝ. Ne þis Alexander nane oþer thyngȝ desyreȝ, bot for to wende abowte and thurgh werre to brynge all þe worlde vndere his subieccion. For werre & debate unrescheȝ his body so fer furth þat, and he 20 ristede any lange tyme witowteñ werre, riȝte als it were for defaute of mete he schulde faile & dye. Leue we hym parefore, and turne we agayne vn-till oure awenñ cuntree, and late hym wende furthe wit the persyenes, if he wiff.' When 24 Alexander herde þis, he garte all þe Oste habide, and he went and stodde in ane heghe place amangeȝ þam, & sayde one this wise: 'Departis ȝow in twaa, so þat þe persyenes be by þam-selfe and þe Macedoynes and þe grekes bi þam-selfe.' 28 And when þay hadd so done, Alexander saide to þe Macedoynes and þe grekes: 'A A, myne owenñ dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'wele [ȝe] knawe þat thir persyenes, vn-to þis day, hase bene con- trary & rebelles vn-to ȝow & to me, and ȝe wiff now lefe me 32 here wit þam, and tourne agayne to ȝour awenñ cuntree. Wele ȝe wate, þat when ȝour hertes were troublede, & fered, for þe wordes þat ware contened in Darius lettres, I thurgh my speche & my conself comforthed ȝour hertis. And afterwarde, when we 36 come in-to þe felde agaynes oure enemys, I went bi-fore ȝow all.

¹ Four lines with miniature A with a springing from it. Small a written in the barrel drawn within on its side, and a tree margin beside it.

And I by myn̄ ane was þe firste mañ þat entrede þe batayle. And 3itt more-ouer, as 3e wele wate, I tuke apouñ me for to be 3oure allere messangere vn-to kyng Darius. And þare, for
 4 3ow, I putt my selfe in many grete *periffis. And þarefore, witte3 wele for certayne, þat, ri3te as hedirtowarde3, we hafe ouercomēd oure enemys and hade þe better of þam̄, ri3te so fro heþein-forwarde3, thurgh þe helpe of oure godde3 we sail ouer-
 8 come oure enemys, & hafe þe victorie of þam̄. And þarefore I say 3ow forsothe, þat, aiff if 3e will tourne agayne to grece & macedoyne, I sail no3te tourne agayne oñ na wyse, þat 3e may knawe þat, wit-owtten̄ gouernance of a kyng, nane Oste may
 12 wynne na wirchipe.' Whē Alexander had said þus, aiff þe prynce3 of Macedoyne and of þe grekes schamede gretely, and askede mercy & forgifnesse, sayande one this wyse: 'Moste wirchippfull emperour, oure lyfe lyes hallely in 3our hande.
 16 Whedir so euer 3e wiff goo we wiff gladly felowe 3our hye maiestee; þofe we schulde aiff dye for 3ow oñ a daye, we sail folow 3ow & neuer lese 3ow.' And þam̄ þay remowed fra þeinne¹ and come in-tiff a cuntree of Inde þat es called Phisiaceñ, in þe
 20 laste ende of July. And þare mette hym þe embassatours of Porus kyng of Inde, and broghte hym lettres fra Porus, þat said oñ this wyse.

² 'Porus kyng of Inde: vn-to þe theeffe Alexander, þat thurgh
 24 thifte & robbery many citee3 wynne3, biddyng we send. Señ þou ert dedely: wharto wenez þou þat þou ert of powere to agaynstande godd' þat es vn-dedely. A grete fole, me thyнке, þou ert þat hase eghne, and cane nott see. Trowes þou we be lyke
 28 vn-to þe Percyenes þat þou hase made subiecte3 vn-to the? Þou hase foughtēd hedir-towarde wit softe meñ & cowarde3, & for þou hase ouercomēd þam̄, þou wenez, þat thi littillness sail brynge oure hye maiestee vnder thi subieccion; þe whilke es
 32 vnpossyble for to bee, bot if godde3 submytt þam̄ vn-to meñ, and þe erthe be euen lyke to þe heuen. I late the wiete, þat I may no3te be ouercommēd for no3te allanly meñ bot also godde3 doee3 seruyce to my name. Wate þou no3te wele, þat ane
 36 Dynise, þe fader of Bachus, come in-tiff Inde, wit a grete Oste for to feghte, bot onane he tournede þe bakke & fledd, for he

for them, and what they will do together.

* Leaf 24.

But whatever they do, he will go on-wards.

They become ashamed of themselves and beg for forgiveness.

They continue their march and meet the ambassadors of Porus.

Porus' letter to Alexander.

He tells him of the superiority of the Indians to the Persians.

The gods also fight for India. The Indians overcame Dionysius.

¹ MS. reads *þeine*.

² Four lines space for miniature *P*. *P* written in the page beside it.

He advises him to go back again to Macedonia. Before Xerxes' time the Macedonians gave tribute to India, but the Indians recked

* Leaf 24 bk.

naught of Macedonia, for it was a barren and little land.

Alexander's knights are troubled at the letter.

He tells them Eastern folks are like wild beasts trusting but in their strength.

Alexander's letter to Porus. Porus' words have stirred on the Greeks to win so great and fruitful a land as India, as well as to crush Porus' pride. For Porus is but a

was noȝte of powere to agaynstande þe vertu of meñ of Inde. And þarefore, or any schame or mischeffe com̄ to þe; we con- sell the & commandeȝ the, þat in all þe haste þat þou may, þou tourne hame agayne to thyne awen̄ lande. Fore wele þou 4 knowes, þat, bi-fore ȝerxes was kyng of Perse, þe macedoynes gaffe tribute till Inde. Bot, by-cause þat þaire lande es barayne & vnprofitable, & na thynges þer-in plesande till a kyng: þe meñ of Inde sett noȝte þare-by. For ilke a mañ, 8 desyres mare a large lande & a plenteuous: þan *a straye lande & a barayne. And þarefore, ȝitt the thirde tourne, I comaunde the that þou tourne hame to thyne awen̄ lande. And neuer, in thi lyfe, couette to hafe Lordschipe þare þou may nane gete.' 12

¹ When þis lettre was comen̄ till Alexander, he gerte rede it be-fore all meñ. And when̄ his knyghtis hadd' herde þe tenour of þis lettre, þay were trublede. And Alexander sayde vn-to þam̄: 'My wirchippfull knyghtis,' quoth he, 'late noȝte ȝour 16 hertis be trublede ne fered' for Porus lettre. Hafe ȝe noȝte in mynde, wit how grete pride Darius wrate vn-till vs dyuerse tymes? I say ȝow sotheley þat all þe folke of thyse Este parties hase þaire hertis & þaire wittis lyke vn-to þe bestes þat þay 20 dueffe wit-all, þat es at say, Tygres, Pardes, & oþer wilde bestis, whilke full selden̄ ere slaen̄ of meñ, and þare-fore þay triste all in þaire strengthe.' And when̄ Alexander hade said thir wordes, he garte writte a lettre vn-to Porus kyng of Inde 24 whare-of this was the tenour.

² 'Kyng of kynges and lorde of lordes, Alexander þe soñ of godd' Amōn & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Porus we sende. Þou hase scharpede oure wittes, & gyffen̄ vs hardynesse for to feghte 28 agaynes þe, whare þou says þat macedoyne es bot a littill lande & barayne of all thyng þat gude es. And Inde, þou says, es large, & plenteuous of all gudeȝ & reches. And þare-fore we sall enforce vs to feghte wit the at all oure myghte, for to con- 32 quere thi landes þat, þou sais, es so full of reches. And, for þou haldeȝ vs pouer, & of na reputaciōn, þare-fore we desire for to ascende to þe heghte of thi majestie. And also þare þou says, þat noȝte allanly vn-to meñ, bot also vn-to goddeȝ þou erte 36 emperour, I sall come to the, for to feght wit þe, as wit añ

¹ Three lines with miniature W and small w written alongside in the margin.

² Eleven lines blank space without either miniature or small letter at side.

haythēn mān full of Pompe & pride and vayne glory, & nozte
 as wit a godd. For all pe werlde may nozte ¹ agaynstand' pe
 wrethe of a godd. Per-fore, seū pe elementis of this aere, pat
 4 es at say Thunners, leuenyngez and water, may nozte bere pe
 indignacion of goddez, how schulde paū dedely meū mowe
 agaynstande paire wrethe? And *pare-fore* I late the * wele
 witte pat pi founde proude speche trubblez me nozte ne mouez
 8 me neuer a dele.'

² When Porus hadd' this lettre, he was wondere wrathe &
 assemblede a grete Oste of meū, and a grete multitude of
 Olyphanntes wit pe whilke pe meū of Inde ere wount for to
 12 feghte, and went agaynes Alexander. This Oste of Porus was
 rihte grete & strange, for *pare* ware per in xiiij. cartes of were
 and viij^c Oliphanntez, and ilk an Olyphante hadd' a toure of tree
 apouū his bakke, & in ilke a toure xxx meū. *Pare* ware also
 16 oper feghting meū on horse and on fote wit-owten nowmer.
 And when pe Macedoynes and pe persyenes sawe pe grete
 multitude bathe of meū & of Olyphauntez, pay were fered, &
 gretely stonayde. Neuer pe lesse, bathe pe partyes ordayned
 20 paū to batell, and arayed' paire batells, Alexander on his syde,
 and Porus on his syde. And Alexander lepe vp-on his horse
 Buktiphalas & prikkede bi-fore all his meū, and comanded,
 pat pe Medoynes & pe persyenes sulde firste begynn to feghte.
 24 And so pay did'; & hym selfe wit pe grekes, and pe macedoynes
 stode on pe toper syde, redy to succour paū when myster ware.
 And for pe Olyphauntez also, Alexander gert make suylike aū
 ordynance. He gert make xxiiij ymagez of brasse, and gert fitt
 28 paū full of dry wodde. And he gerte make also cartes of yreū,
 for to bere thir ymagez before pe Olyphauntez and when pe
 Ostez came nere to-gedir he gert sett fyre in pe wodd' pat was in
 pe ymages. And when pe Olyphauntez saw pir ymages, pay
 32 wende pat pay hadd' bene meū and schott owte paire groynes,
 as pay were wount for to do for till hafe weryed paū. And
 alsone thurgū pe grete hete, pay were brynned' and thaū thay
 gaffe bakke, & fledd' for drede to brynne payre groynes. And
 36 *pare-fore* pe meū pat were abowū in pe toures myghte nozte
 wyū to for to feghte. And when Porus saw that he was reghte

heathen
 man full of
 pride.
 He
 threatens
 him with
 the wrath
 of the gods.

* Leaf 25.

Porus is
 angered at
 the letter
 and
 gathers a
 great army
 with
 elephants.
 Its
 numbers
 and array.

Alex-
 ander's
 allies are
 startled by
 the appear-
 ance of the
 elephants
 and the
 Indian
 army.

Alex-
 ander's
 device for
 over-
 coming the
 elephants.

¹ *agaynstand* written in the margin, with a
 mark of insertion over against it in the text.

² Four lines space with red capital *W*.
 Small *w* in margin next it.

The allies begin the battle and fight for thirty days. When exhausted they are re-

* Leaf 25 bk.

placed by the Greeks and Macedonians.

Utter defeat of the Indians and flight of Porus.

Siege and capture of Porus' city. The riches of Porus' palace.

The walls were plated with gold an inch thick.

The palace gates were of ivory and ebony.

The wonders of the hall. The golden birds that sang as though alive.

sary. Þaṅ þe Medoynes & þe persyenes, wit arowes and speres & oper dyuerse wayynes of werre, slewe thykfalde of þe meṅ of Inde. And thus þay faghte contenuelly xxx^{ti} days, & mekiſt pople of bathe þe parties ware dede. And at þe laste þe 4 Medoynes, & þe persyenes, begaṅ faste for to fayle. And when Alexander saw that, he was wondere wrathe, and entrede in-to þe batelle, sittand on his horse Buctiphalas, *and faghte mann-fully, & þe grekes & þe macedoynes wit hym. And his horse 8 also helped hym gretely. And thaṅ belyfe þe Indynes begaṅ gretely for to fayle. And when Porus saw that he turned þe bakke & fledd. And þaṅ þe Indynes þat ware leste oṅ lyfe fledd also. And Alexander lugeḏ hym thare wit his Oste and 12 made Sacrafice till his goddez and commaunded for to bery þe dedd bodys, bathe of Indynes & of þe persyenes & þe Macedoynes.

¹ Sone after, apou a day, Alexander ensegedd Porus citee & 16 wanṅ it, and went in-till Porus Palace, whare-In he fande² mare reches þaṅ any maṅ wiſt trowe. For he fande þare-in x^t pelers of Massy golde, ilkaṅ of a grete thikness & a grete lenthe, wit þaire chapytraſſes. And bitwene þe pelers of golde, 20 ware hyngande venettez of golde & syluere, wit leues of golde. And þe brawnchez of this venett ware suṁ of cristalle, suṁ of Margaritez, suṁ of Smaragdes, & suṁ of Onyches, and þay semed as þay hade bene verray vynes. Þe walles also of þe 24 palace ware couerde aṅ ouer wit plates of golde, þe whilke when þe Macedoynes cutte in soundre & brakke, þay fande þat þay ware a gret ynche thikke. And þir walles ware sett full of diuerse precious stanes, þat es at say, of charebuncles, Smaragdes, 28 Margarites & Amatistes. And þe zates of þe Palace ware of Euour wonder whitt, & þe bandez of þaṁ, & þe legges of Ebene. Þe chambirs, also, of þis Palace, were aṅ of Cipresse, and þe beddez in þaṁ ware sett full of Margaritez, Smaragdez, & 32 charebuncles. Þe hauff, also, of þis Palace, was sett full of ymages of golde, & bi-twix þaṁ stode perlatanes of golde, in þe branches of whilke þare were many manners of fewles & ilke a fewle was colourede, & paynted after his kynde asked, þe 36 bekes of þaṁ, & þe clowes ware aṅ of fyne golde. And ay,

¹ Four lines with red capital ornate S, and small s in margin beside.

² MS. repeats *he fande* twice.

when Porus liste, thir fewles thurgh crafte of music walde syngre after paire kynde askede & was. He fande also in *pat* Palace veselles wit-owten nowmer, sum of golde, sum of Cristalle, 4 Sum of oper maneres of precyouse stanes, sum of Suluere, and *pat* all maner of vesell *pat* meñ sulde be serued offe. Bot *pare* were bot fewe of *pañ* of Siluere.

The riches of the treasury. There is but little silver.

¹Fra thethyñ, Alexander remowede his Oste & come to þe 8 gates of Caspee, and *pare* he lugeð hyñ. It was a noble lande & a gude. Bot *pare* ware *pare*-In many maners * of nedders and of wilde bestez. Fra þeine Alexander sent a *lettre* tiff Talifride quene of Amazon, of þis tenour.

* Leaf 26.

12 ²'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordes, Alexander, þe soñ of godd' Amoñ, & þe quene Olympias, vn-to Talifride þe quene of Amazon, ioi. The grete Bataylles *pat* we hafe hadd' wit 16 kyng Darius, & how we hafe conquered' all his rewme, and his lordchipes, we trowe be noghte unknawen vn-to 30w. And also how we hafe foghten with Porus þe kyng of Inde & his cheeffe citee wonnen. And also wit many oper folkes, & pay ware neuer of powere to agaynstande vs, þe whilke we suppose 20 be nozte vknawen vn-to 30we. Wharefore we sende 30w worde, & commande3 30w, *pat* 3e sende vs tribute, if 3e wiff *pat* wee com nozte to 30w to do 30w disesse.'

Alexander's letter to the Queen of the Amazons mentioning his victories and demanding tribute.

And vn-to this *lettre* Talifride made ansuere by *lettre* one this 24 wyse.

³'Talyfride quene of Amazon wit oper grete ladys of oure rewme, vn-tiff Alexander, kyng of Macedoyne, joy. We hafe wele herde tesse of þe hye witt *pat* es in the, thurgh whilke pou 28 hase in mynde thynges *pat* ere passede, and dispose3 thynges *pat* ere present, and knawe3 thynges *pat* ere to come. Avyse the wele *parefore* are pou come tiff vs, what trebulacionez & disesse may falle the in thi comynge. For *pare* was neuer 32 nane 3it *pat* werreyed agayne3 vs *pat* ne he had' schame *pare*-offe at þe ende. And *pare*-fore take hede to thi last ende. For grete schame it es tiff a wyse mañ thurgh indiscrecion to falle in mescheffe. Bot if it be lykyngre to þe, to knawe our con- 36 uersacyon, and oure habitacion, we declare it vn-to þe be oure

The answer of the Queen of the Amazons. She has heard of his victory. She warns him of the danger of attacking the Amazons.

She describes their land

¹ Three lines with miniature capital *F* and small *f* beside in the margin.

² Four lines with ornate capital *K* and small *k* in margin beside.

³ Twelve lines space for miniature which is lacking. Written in the margin is '*Regina Talibus cum duabus astantibus*'.

and their manners. They are in an island girdled round by a river. The men dwell on the other side of the river. How they breed their kind.

* Leaf 26
bk.

How they ride to war.

Their husbands honour them at their return. They will fight Alexander, who will get no honour through victory over women, but rather if he be overthrown, to the women shall it be great honour, to him great shame. Alexander laughs and sends them another letter, telling them that he has conquered three parts of the world and never been withstood.

present *lettres*, *pat* oure habitaciō es in ane Ile, *pat* es closede abowte wit a grete reuer *pat* no^{per} hase bygynnyngē nor endynge. Bot on a syde we hafe a strayte entree. And the nowmer of women *pat* duellez *per*-in es cexiiii^m *pat* ere nozte 4 filed wit meñ. For oure husbandez duellez nozte amangez vs ne no no^{per} mañ, Bot on *pe* to^{per} syde of *pe* reuer. And ilke a zere we make a solempne feste in the wirchipe of Iubiter xxx days. And *pañ* we go till oure husbandes, and duellez 8 wit *pañ* o^{per} xxx dayes & hase oure luste and oure disporte * to-gedir as kynde askes. And if any of vs *consayfe* & bere a childe if it be a male *pe* modere kepis it seuēd zere and thañ sendez it to *pe* fadere. And if scho bere a maydeñ 12 childe *pe* moder haldez it wit hir & techez it oure maners. When we goo to werre agayne zoure enemys we ere c^m rydand^r one horse wele armede. And suñ of vs hase bowes & arowes, and suñ speres, and o^{per} diuerse wapyne. And *pe* remanent 16 kepez oure Ile. And when we come wit the victorye oure husbandez does vs grete wirchipe. And *pare*-fore if *þou* come agaynes vs we late the witt *pat* we will feghte wit the at all oure myzte. And if it happen *pat* *þou* hafe *pe* victory of vs, 20 wirchipe sall it nane be to the bi-cause *þou* hase discomfit women. And if we discomfit the, it sall be an heghe wirchippe till vs, *pat* we may discomfit so wirchippull an emperour; and to the it sall be a hye reprove. Where-fore we sygnifie vn-to 24 *pe* by oure *lettres* *pat* *þou* come nozte agaynes vs for sekerly *pare* may grete dysese come *pare*-offe, *pat* *per*auenture *þou* knawe; nozte now offe at *pis* tymme.'

When Alexander hadd' redd' *pis* *lettre*, he began to lawghe. 28 And onane he garte writte ano^{per} *lettre*, and sent it to Talyfride, whare-offe *pe* tenour was this.

¹ Alexander kyng of kynges and of lordez, the soñ of godd' Amōñ & *pe* qwene Olympias, to Talyfride quene of Amazon 32 and *pe* o^{per} ladys of *pe* same rewme: ioy. We late zow weite *pat* thre parties of *pe* werlde, *pat* es to say, Asye, Affric, & Europe we hafe conquered and made subiects vn-till vs, & *pare* was neuer nane of *pañ* *pat* myzte agaynstande oure powere. 36 And if we now suld nozte be of powere, to feghte with zowe it ware ane heghe schame till us. Neuer-*pe*-lesse for als mekiff

¹ Thirteen lines blank space for a miniature.

als we lufe *your conuersacion* we conseil pat ze come¹ forthe of
your Ile & your husbondez wit zow, and appere in oure
 presence. For we swere zow bi god' Amoñ oure Fader, & by
 4 all oure goddez pat ze sailt hafe na disesse of vs. Bot gyffez vs
 sumwhat in name of tribute and we schall fynd zow and zoure
 Amazonns pat come * wit zow horse ynowe. And when zou
 listees for to wende hame agayne, ze schall hafe gude leue.'
 8 And when þe Amazons hadd' redd' þis *lettre*, þay went to
 conseil, and thoghte it was beste for to ascent vn-till hym.
 And þan þay sent hym x stedes þe beste pat myzte be funden
 in any cuntree, and x oper horse þe beste pat myzte be geten,
 12 and a grete sunn of golde. And Talifride hir selfe and oper
 ladys wit hir went un-till hym, and accorded wit hym, and
 went hame agayne, wonder glade and blythe.

⁹ In þe mene tyme it was talde Alexander, pat Porus, þe kyng
 16 of Inde, was in Bactricen, and assembled a grete Oste for to
 feghte eftsonns wit hym. And when Alexander herde this, he
 remowede his Oste, and chese owte c.l of duyercs pat knewe þe
 cuntree, for to hafe þe gouernance of his Oste, and to lede þan
 20 seurlly thurgh þat strange cuntree. In þe Monethe of Auguste,
 when þe son es maste hate, þay bigan for to take paire iournee.
 And thay went thurgh a dry cuntree, sandye, & wit-owtten
 water. And nedlyngez þan byhoued wende armede, þare was
 24 so grete plentee of neddys, and cruell³ wyld bestes. For
 thies forsaid gydez ware mare fauorable to Porus, þan till
 Alexander & his Oste, and þare-fore þay ledd' þan thurgh
 swilke barrayne and perillous cuntreez. And when Alexander
 28 saw it schope thus, and that his conseil byfore had sayd þe sothe,
 pat es at say, bathe his awn frende and men of Caspy, pat
 conseld hym pat he suld nozte hie hym ouerfaste, ne triste to
 mekill to stranzgers; þan he commanded pat all men schulde
 32 wende armed: & so þay did. And þan all þe Oste schane rizte
 as it had bene sternes, for sum of paire armours ware of golde,
 sunn of siluer, and sunn of precious stanes. And when Alexander
 saw þe araye of his Oste, and paire baners bi-fore þan
 36 Schynande so faire, he was rizte glade. Neuer-þe-les grete
 disese he hadd' pat nowþer he, ne his men, myzte fynde na water.

He summons them before him and advises them to give tribute.

* Leaf 27.

The Amazons assent to the terms of the letter.

Alexander moves his army against Porus through the desert in the month of August. The desert is waterless and full of snakes and wild beasts, for the guides were favourable to Porus. Alexander then remembers the wise words of his council. They all go armed, so that the whole army gleams like the stars, with banners and a shining mail.

¹ MS. *conce*.

² Six lines with miniature *I*, covering with

its foliage three-quarters of the margin.

³ *wh* turned into *wy*.

A Macedonian knight finds water in a hollow and brings it to Alexander in his helmet. Alexander refuses it lest he alone of all go refreshed. He *Leaf 27 bk. casts it down upon the rocks and goes without, so that all his followers are comforted as though they had drunken water. On the morrow they come to a river with reeds on its banks as high as pine trees. They drink of the water; it slew many of them with a flux. Alexander is greatly distressed, not only for his knights but also for the many beasts of burden that bear their things, and the flocks and herds that go with them.

So it felle þat a knyghte of Macedoyne þat hyste zephilus fand water standynge in an holle stane, þat was gadird þare of þe dewe of þe heuen, the whilke þis forsaide knyghte putt in his Bacenett, & brozthe it tilf Alexander for to drynke. And 4 Alexander saide un-tilf hym, 'I suppose,' quop he, 'þat I drynke þis water, saif þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes be any thyng refreschede þareby, or I saif hafe all þe refreschyng be my selfe.' And he ansuerd, & saide, 'þou all ane lorde,' quop he, 'saif be 8 comforthed þareby.' Quop Alexander þa, 'And* if 3e¹ saif all þe perische trowes þou þat it solde be lykand to mee, for to lyfe in sorowe & disese seyng þe dedd of þe Macedoynes & þe persyenes?' And be-lyue he garte helte down þe water on þe 12 erthe be-fore all his men. And when his knyghtis saw that, þay were hugely comforthede þare-by rizte als Ilka of þa hadd dronken a grete draughte of water, and þa went furthe þaire waye. And on þe morne, þay come tilf a reuere whase 16 bankes was growand full of grete redys & þay ware als hye as pyne-treese; 3a, for þe maste partie of xī fote lange. Than badd [he] that þay drawe of þe water and bryng to þe Oste. Bot all þat dranke þare-offe it keste þa in-tilf a flux, and slewe 20 a grete hepe of þam. For þat water was wonder scharpe, and als bittire als any mekill gyirse. Bot þa was Alexander gretly disessedd & all his Oste nozte allanly of þa-selfe, bot also for þaire horsez & þaire beste3 þat þay ledd wit þa þe whilke bi-ga 24 for to faile for thyrste. Alexander hadd wit hym a thowsande Olyphante3 þat bare his golde, And foure hundreth cartes of werre and jm & cc waynez. He hadd also in his Oste ccc^m horse men and muyles & camelles witowten nowmer, þat bare þaire 28 vetails, and oper thynges þat was necessarye to þe Oste; also oxen and kye, schepe and swyne, wit-owten nowmer, þe whilke perischt for defaute of drynke. Sum of Alexander knyghtes lykked Ireñ, Sum dranke oyle, & sum ware at so grete meschefe 32 þat þay dranke þaire aweñ stalyng. And thare was so grete habundance of nedders & oper venymous bestee3, þat þam by-houed nede3 traueile armed, and þat was a grete nuy to þam & añ heghe disese. Þa was Alexander wonder² sorye & namely 36 for þe disese þat his Oste suffrede.

¹ On first side of leaf 27 3e saif is written, but on the second side 3e schal.

² MS. undoubtedly reads *worder*, but one must substitute *wonder*.

1 And as þay went endlande þis reuere, abowte þe viii houre
 of þe day, þay come till a castell þat stode in a littill Ile in þis
 forsaid' ryuere; And this castell was made of þe forsaid' redez.
 4 Þe brede of this ryuer was foure furlange lenth. And in þat
 castell þay sawe a few meñ. And þañ Alexander bad his meñ
 spirre þañ þat ware in þe castell in þe langage of Inde whare
 þay myghte fynde any swete watir able for to drynke. And
 8 also soñ als þay spake to þañ þay with-drewe þañ & hidd'.
 And Alexander gerte schotte arowes in-to þe castell and þañ
 þay hidd' þañ wele þe mare. And when Alexander saw *that
 þay walde one na wyse speke wit hym, he hadd' a certane of his
 12 knyghtes nakne þam & swyme ouer þe water to þe castell. And
 þañ xxxvii balde knyghtis & hardy of Macedoyne naked' þañ,
 and tuke ilkañ of þañ a swerde in his hande & went in-to þe
 water & swame it to þay were passede þe ferthe parte þare-offe.
 16 And soðeynly thare rase oute of þe water a grete multitude
 of beste, þat ere called' ypotaynes, grettere of body thañ añ
 olyphant, and deuored' thir knyghtis euer-ilkanze. And þañ
 was Alexander rihte sare greuede, and be-lyfe garte take þe
 20 forsaid' guydez cl & caste þañ in-to þe water. And onane
 þe ypotaynes deuored' þam.

And Alexander thoghte it was nozte spedfull langare to stryffe
 wit thase monstres, and garte tromppe vp and remowed' his
 24 Oste fra þeine, and went so all þat day wondere wery for thriste.
 And also þay hadd' grete disese & nuye of wilde ² Beste þat come
 apoñ þañ, þat es to say, of lyones, beres, vnycornes, tygres,
 and pardez, wit þe whilke þay faughte & grete traueñ hade,
 28 ³ And as þay went oñ þis wyse wit grete angere & disese
 aboute þe elleued' houre þay saw a littill bate in þe riuere made
 of rede and meñ rowande þare-in. And Alexander gert spirre
 þañ in þe langage of Inde, whare þay myzte fynde any fresche
 32 water. And þay talde whare & schewed' þañ a place a littill
 þeine whare-in þay saide þay scholde fynde a grete staunke of
 swete water and gude. And þañ Alexander & hys Oste went
 all aboute þat ryuere, & come till þis forsaid' stanke and lugged'
 36 þañ aboute it. And Alexander comanded' þat þay sulde felle

In what
 fearful
 ways his
 knights try
 to quench
 their
 thirst.
 Going
 along the
 banks they
 come to a
 little isle
 with a
 castle,

* Leaf 28.

wherein are
 men who
 will give
 them no
 answer.
 Alexander
 bids
 certain of
 his knights
 swim the
 stream.
 They swim
 the river,
 but are de-
 uoured by
 hippopo-
 tami.
 Alexander
 throws the
 guides into
 the river
 and they
 are de-
 uoured
 also.
 They travel
 onwards
 greatly
 worried by
 wild beasts.
 At the
 eleventh
 hour they
 meet a
 small boat
 whose crew
 direct them
 to a great
 pond of
 fresh water.
 They camp
 round the

¹ Four lines with miniature *A* and small *a* written in MS. margin beside.

² *of* deleted by the scribe before *Beste*.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the MS. margin beside.

pond. Alexander bids that they fell a great wood of huge reeds that grow around it.

When the moon rises a great crowd of scorpions come down to drink. And there come snakes also and many-hued dragons. These have crested heads with

* Leaf 28 bk.

golden breasts and open mouths.

Their breath slew any quick thing it smote upon and out of their eyes came fiery flames.

Alexander comforts his frightened knights.

Alexander shows how to fight them with nets, and slays many of them.

How many men of Alexander fell thereby.

The wondrous crabs that then attack

them. Then come white Lions

a wodd' pat growed' faste *pare*-by three myle on lenthe, & allis mekill on brede. Pat wodde was all of pe rede; pat I spak of bi-fore, and pe stanke was a myle on lenth. Pañ Alexander comanded' pat pay sulde make many fires in pe Oste, and gerte 4 trompe to pe mete. And alsoñ pe mone be-gañ to schynne *pare* come a grete multitude of scorpyons to-warde pe stanke for to take pañ a drynke. And pañ *pare* come oper manere of nedders, and dragones wonder grete of dyuerse colours. 8 And all pat cuntree resouned' of pe noyse & pe hissinge; pat pay made. Pir dragones come dounne fra pe hye mountaynes for to drynke of pe stanke, and pay hadd' crestis one paire heddez & paire brestez ware bryghte lyk golde, & paire 12 mowthes open. Paire aande slewe any quikk thyng pe it smate apouñ, and oute of paire eghne *pare* come flammes of fyre. And when Alexander & his Oste saw pañ pay ware rijt *fered for pañ. For pay wende pay schulde hafe weried' pañ 16 ilkañ. And pañ Alexander comforthed' pañ and saide vn-to pañ: 'Mi wirchpuff knyghtes,' quop he, 'bees nozte agaste of pañ, bot does ilkane as ze see me do.' And pañ he tuk a nett & sett it bi-twixe hym & pañ and take his schelde & his spere 20 & faughte wit pañ manfully. And when his knyghtes saw pat pay ware gretly comforthed' & be-lyfe take paire wapynnez & didd' als pay sawe Alexander doo, and slewe of pañ a grete multitude, whatt thurgh dyuerse wapynnez, what in paire fyres. 24 And of Alexander knyghtes pe dragones slewe xx^{ti} & xxx^{ti} fotemen. After pañ, *pare* come owte of pe forsaide wodde of redez, Crabbes of a wonderfull greteness; and paire bakkes ware harder pañ cocadrillez. And when pe knyghtis smate pañ one 28 pe bakkes wit paire speres, pay myzte nozte perche pañ, ne na harme do pañ. Neuer-pe-lesse pay slewe many of pañ in paire Fires and pe remenant of pañ gatt in-to pe staunke. And aboute pe sexte houre of pe nyghte *pare* come apouñ pañ whytt 32 lyones grettere pañ Bulles, and pay schoke paire heuede; at pañ & grete manace made in paire manere. Pañ pe knyghtes keped' pañ in paire nettis and slew pam. After this *pare* comd' apouñ pañ pañ a grete multitude of swynne pat ware all of a 36 wonderfull mekillness, wit tuskes of a cubett lenthe. And wit pañ *pare* come wilde men & women of pe whilke ilkañ hadd' sex hende. Bot Alexander & his knyghtes keped' pañ in paire

- nettis & slewe many of þam̄. And on þis wyse Alexander & his Oste was gretly disesed. Þam̄ comanded Alexander þat þay schuld make many fyres wit-owtten þe Oste aboute þe stanke.
- 4 After this þare come apoūn þam̄ a wondere grete beste, grettere & strangere þam̄ ān Olyphaunt, and he hadde in his frunte three lange hornes. And he was schapen̄ lyke a horse & he was all blakke. And þis beste was called in þe langage of Inde
- 8 'Anddontrucion̄'. And or he went to þe water at drynke, he assailed þe Oste. Bot Alexander went here & þare amangez þe oste & comforthed þam̄. This ilke beste slewe of his knyghtes xxvij and bare donne lij and at þe laste it fette in þe nettis and
- 12 was slayne. After þis þare come oute of þe redez a grete multitude of mysz als grete als foxes, and ete up þe dede bodys. Þare was na qwike thynges, þat þay bate þat ne also sōn it dyed. Bot harme did þay nane *to þe oste. Þam̄ come þare flyande
- 16 amangez þam̄ bakkes, grettere þam̄ wilde dowfes, and paire tethe ware lyke mēn-tethe. And þay didd mēn mekill disese and hurte many mēn. Of sum̄ þay bate offe þe nese; of sum þe eres. In þe mornenyng arely þare come many fewlis als
- 20 grete as wlturs, reed of colour, and paire fete & paire bekes all blakke. Bot þay didd na disese to þe oste, bot went to þe stanke-syde & drewe fisches & elez oute of þe water, & ete þam̄.
- 24 ¹ Þam̄ lefte Alexander þir perilous placez, and come wit his Oste, in-to þe cuntree of Bactricēn, þe whilke was full of golde & oper reches. And þe mēn of þe cuntree resayfed hym benyngly & wirchipfully and gaffe hym and his Oste grete giftes.
- 28 And þare he habade xx^{ti} dayes. In þat cuntree þay sawe trees þat, in-stedde of leues, bare wolfe; þe whilke folkez of þe cuntree gaderd & made clathe þare-offe. Þe knyghtes of Alexander wex wonder balde & strange of hert because of
- 32 þe victoryes þay hadd wonnen̄ of þe wilde beste; before neuenned.
- ² Fra thethyn, Alexander remowed his Oste and come to þe place whare Porus lay wit þe folke þat he hadd assembled.
- 36 And one þe morne bathe Alexander and Porus tuke paire grounde & arayed paire bateils for to feghte. And thān

greater than bulls. Then follow huge swine with great tusks. And with them six-handed men and women.

They make great fires around the pond. Then comes a horselike beast greater than an elephant. Alexander again

* Leaf 29.

rallies his men. It slays many, but is at last slain.

Mice as big as foxes eat up the dead bodies.

Whatever they bit at once died.

Then come bats greater than wild doves.

They march into Bactria where they are well received.

The wool-bearing trees.

The knights take courage because of the strange beasts they

¹ Four lines with red ornate capital þ, but small t scribbled in the margin beside.

² Four lines space with red capital S and small s written in the margin beside.

have conquered. The armies of Porus and Alexander are arrayed against each other. The Indians fall heavily. Porus challenges Alexander to single combat. The kingship of the nations to abide by the outcome. For Porus being a great man scorned Alexander.

* Leaf 29 bk.

Porus hits Alexander on the head.

Alexander slays Porus by a trick. The Indians fight on for their dead king. Alexander chides them for fighting when their leader is dead.

Alexander bespeaks them peace and surety.

They are right glad and wor-

Alexander lepped apon his horse Buktiphalas and went bfore his Oste & pañ pay trumpede up & þe bateills joyned sameñ, & faghte to-gedir rihte sare. Bot þe Indienes fell thikfalde in þe bateill as corne dose in þe felde be-fore þe sythe. 4
¹And when Porus saw that, he went and stode bi-fore all his meñ, and cryed vn-till Alexander, & saide on this wyse: 'It sittez nozte till an emperour,' quop he, 'to lose his meñ þus in wayne. Bot it sittez till hym for to determyne his 8 cause with his awenñ handez. And þarefore late thi folke stand still on þe ta syde, & myñ on þe toper & late the & me feghte to gedir hand' for hand'. And if it happen þat þou ouer-come me, my folke & I sañ be subiectez vn-to þe. And 12 if I ouer come the, thañ thou & thi folkez be subiectez vn-to me.' Thir wordez said Porus dispysand Alexander, bi-cause þat he was a mañ of littill stature. For he was bot three cubites hye, & Porus was fyfe cubetes hye & mare. And þare- 16 fore he traysted hym all in strenghe of his body, nozte knowande þe vertu & þe hardnes þat was hidd in Alexander.

*And than bathe þe ostes stode still ant lete þe twa kyngez feghte sameñ, Porus gaffe Alexander a grete str[a]ke 20 on þe hede, & was in poynte to hafe felled hym. And then Porus knyghtes sett vp a grete Schowte. And Porus tourned hym to þam-warde for to reprove þam for þaire schowtting. And Alexander went till hym manfully & tuke his swerd in 24 bathe his handez & lete flye at hym & hitt hym fullbott one þe heued' & slew hym. And when þe Indienes saw that þay bi-gan scharply for to fighte wit Alexander & his oste. Vn-to whayme Alexander spake & sayde: 'Wrechis,' quop he, 28 'wharto feghte 3e señ 3our kynge es dede. Wate 3e nozte wele that thare na gouernour es þe folke are sparpled' be-lyfe als schepe þat ere wit-owtten' ane hirde.' Þe Indienes ansuerd' & saide: 'Vs es leuer,' quop þay, 'fighte manfully, and dye in the 32 felde, þañ for to see þe dissolacioñ of oure folke, and oure lande be destroyed' & wasted.' 'Leues 3our feghtyng,' quop Alexander, '& wende 3 hame to 3our howsez pesaybly & seurely. For I swere 3ow bi oure goddez, if 3ee wilt do so, 3e sañ hafe no harme, ne 36 3our lande sañ nozte be destroyed' ne spoyled', bicause þat 3e hafe feghten so manfully for 3our kynge.' And when þe Indienes

¹ Robert Louson is scribbled here in the right-hand margin.

herde thir wordes þay keste fra þam þaire wapynez & thanked Alexander and wirchiped him rihte als he hadd bene a godd. Than kyng Alexander lugeð hym þare & his Oste wit hym, & he command to bery þe dede corsez þat ware slayne in þe Bateff, and offred sacrafice till his goddez. Also he garte Entere Porus þe kyng of Inde wirchipfully.

¹Fra thethynd Alexander remowed his Oste & come till a cuntree þat was called Oxidrases. The folkes of þat cuntree are wonder Symple men, and nozte prowde, & þay are called Gumnosophiste. Þay feghte neuer mare ne stryfes. Þay ga alway naked, & citez ne townnez hafe þay nane, Bot duellez in lugez & in caues. When þe kyng of þis folke herd tell of þe comyng of Alexander he wrate a lettre, & sent vn-till hym whare-offe this was the tenour.

^{2*} 'The corruptible Gumnosophist vn-till Alexander a man wee wryte. We here tell þat þou commez to werre apoñ vs, whare of we merueylle vs gretly. For wit vs sail þou fynd nathing þat þou may spoyle vs offe. For we hafe na thyng elles amangez vs, bot allanly whare with we may sustene oure wafull bodys. What may þou þan take fra vs. Bot if þou come for to feght wit vs, feghte on. For I late the wele witt, þat oure symplenes wiff we on na wyse lefe.' When Alexander had redd this lettre he sent ane ansuere agayne on this wyse. 'Paisably,' quop he, 'wiff we com to þow and no violence do þow.' And þan he wente in-to þe cuntree whare þay duelled. And he saw þan ga naked & duelle in luges & in caues, & þaire wyfes & þaire childre away fra þan, walkand wit wilde bestez. And he hadd grete marueylle, & asked þan if þay hadd any oper howsez. And þay ansuerde & said; 'Nay. Bot in thir holettez duelle we alwaye & in þir caues.' And Alexander commendid gretely þaire symplenesse, and bad þan aske hym whate-so þay walde. And þay ansuerd & sayde, 'Gyffe vs,' quop þay, 'vndedlynesse, so þat we mow nozte dye; for oper reches couet we nane.' Quop Alexander, 'I am dedely my selfe, how þan may I giffe þou vndedlynesse?' And when þay herd hym say soo þan þay ansuerd & sayde on this wyse. 'A, A, wreched man,' quop þay, 'whare to wendez þou þus

ship Alexander as a god. King Alexander offers sacrifice and buries Porus worshipfully. King Alexander comes to the Gymnosophists, a strange people.

* Leaf 30. The letter of their king to Alexander, telling him he has naught to win of them.

Alexander commends them and comes peaceably to them. He sees them leading the life of nature.

He admires their ways greatly and offers them a boon. They ask for deathlessness. They chide him for his ambition when they

¹ Five lines with red capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T*.

hear he also must die. He says he is driven on to conquer by the might of God, which will not allow him to rest. He goes thence.

He comes to the pillars of Hercules, which are statues, * Leaf 30 bk. one of gold and one of silver. He finds them hollow and puts money therein. He marches thence into a cold and mirky wilderness. They come to a great river, on the other side of which are fair women foully clad, who bear weapons of silver since other metal have they none. There were no men amongst them.

aboute, & quellez so many meñ, & soo many ilke dediz dooes sen pou wate wele þat pou sail dye.' 'For sothe,' quop he, 'þe cause whi I do it es of þe prouydence of godd. For hys mynystre I am, doand þe commandement of hym. 3ee wate 4 wele þat þe see es nozte trubbled' of hym selfe. Bot when þe wynde entres in-till hym, það it stirrez hym & troublez hym. I walde hafe ristedd' and lefte all werre. Bot þare es anoþer spyryte & suffres it nozte be in reste.' And when Alexander 8 hadde said' thir wordez he lefte það & went till anoþer cuntree.

¹ Anoþer day, he come wit his Oste till a place wharee twa ymagez ware, þe whilke Ercules gart make & sett in þat place. 12 And þe tane of það was of fyne golde and þe toþer of fyne Siluere, & the lenthē of aythir of það was twa cubettis. When Alexander saw þir ymagez, * he gert perche² það for to witt, wheþer þay ware holle or massy. And he fand' 16 þat þay were a party holle. And he garte stoppe þe hole agayne and putt in það a thowsande nobles, & fyve hundreth. And fra þeine he remowed his Oste, and entrede in-till a wildirnesse calde & myrk, 'so þat þay myghte vnnethes añ 20 knawe anoþer or see anoþer. And fra thythiñ þay went seuē daye iournee and entred' in-till a wildirnesse, and come till a grete reuere. And bi-3onde þat riuere þay saw wonder faire & wele vesaged' women cledd' in foule clethyng & horrible; and 24 þay hadd' in þaire handez wapne made all of siluere, bicause þay hadd' noþer Ireñ ne stele. And þay rade one horse. And men saw þay nane amangez það. And when þe Oste walde hafe passede ouer this ryuere, þay myzte nozte be cause it was 28 rizte brade and full of dragones and oþer monstres.

³ Fra thethin þay went aboute towardez þe lefte party of⁴ Inde and come till a dry Marras full of gret redez. And as þay passed thurgh þat Marras, be-lyue þare come owte of þe 32 redez a beste lyke ane ypotayne, whase breste was lyke to þe cocadriife, and his bakke lyk a sawe, and his tethe wonder grete, & als scharpe as a suerde; bot in his gangyng he was

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

² Bottom of leaf 30 right-hand side reads as above gert perche; top of leaf 30 turning over to the left-hand side reads garte

perche.

³ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* written in the margin beside.

⁴ MS. of twice.

als slaw als a snyle. And, in his oute-come, he slew twa knyghtis of *Alexander*. This ilke beste myzte pay on na wyse perche wit paire speres. Bot wit mellis of yreñ pay slew it.

They come to a dry morass and meet a terrible beast.

They come to the uttermost isles of India.

There come a great multitude of elephants against them. But *Alexander* overcomes them by a trick.

He bids his men take swine against

Leaf 31.

them and makes the swine squeal.

4 ¹ And fra þeine pay trauelde thritty day iournez and come to þe vttermaste iles of Inde, & pare pay luges^d þam beside; a ryuere þat es callede in þat langage of Inde Hemmahurer. And aboute þe Eleuend^d houre þar come owte of þe woddez a grete
8 multitude of Olyphantez & come apoñ þam wit a gret birre & paire groynes opyñ. And onane *Alexander* lepe apoñ his horse Buktiphalas and busked^d hym agaynes þam and badd^d þe macedoynes þat pay solde tak paire horse and ilk a mañ a swyne in
12 a bande, & wende agaynes þe olyphantis. And when þe oliphantes saw þam, pay come gapande wit paire groynez redy te tak þam. And when þe Macedoynes saw þat pay ware fered^d and durste nozte go to þam. And *Alexander* saide vn-to þam,
16 'My wirchipfull knyghtes,' quop he, 'bese of gud comforthe and dredez þow na-tyngge. For, and þe will gare þoure swyne crye faste * þe schall see all þir Olyphantes flee anoñ.' And alsone als þe Olyphantes herde þe crye of þe swyne, and þe
20 noyse of paire trompes, pay fledd^d and durste nozte habyde. And *Alexander* & his meñ pursued^d tham, and what wit nettis, whatt wit swerdes & speres, pay slewe of þam a grete multitude, and come agayne to thaire tentis.

24 ² Anoper day pay removed^d þeine, and trauelde thurgh the same woddez of ³ Inde. And pay fande þare womeñ with berdis rechange downe to paire pappes, & paire heuede; playne abownne, and pay ware cledd^d all in skynnes. Pay chasede thir
28 womeñ and sum of þam pay tuke & broghte þam till *Alexander*. And he gart spirre þam in the langage of Inde, how pay lifed in these woddes, whare na duellyng was of meñ. And pay answered^d & said, 'We lyffe all,' quop pay, 'wit venyson þat we
32 take in thir woddes thurgh huntynge.'

They march thence through the forests of India and come upon wild women with long beards.

⁴ When pay ware passed^d oute of thir woddez; pay come in-till a faire felde vn-till a place whare this forsaid^d riuere rañ. And þare pay fande bath meñ & womeñ all naked. And þare ware

And they find also other tribes of wild men

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* beside it in margin.

² Four lines with capital *A* in red, and small *a* beside.

³ *Inde* altered into *Inde*.

⁴ Four lines with red capital *W* and small *w* written in the margin beside.

and
women.

They go
thence fif-
teen days
till they
meet the
Cynocephali
whom they
overcome.

They
march
forty days
to a barren
land with
no hills,
and a
terrible
east
wind blows
over it and
causes fires
and disease
throughout
the camp.
They fear
it is be-
cause of
Alex-

* Leaf 31
bk.

ander's
ambition.
He tells
them it is
because
of the
Equinox.
Then they
go thence
twenty-five
days to a
green
valley
where is
fearful
cold. They
light fires
against the
snow-
storms.
Rain comes
and the
snow stops,
but five

als rughe of hare as þay hade bene bestes. Whase kynde & custom it was als wele to be in þe water, als on þe lande. And als sone als þay saw Alexander Oste onane þay fledd to þe water, and dowked in-till it. Fra þeine þay traueled xv day iournee, 4 and entred in-till woddes þat ware full of cynocephals, þe whilke als sonð als þay saw Alexander & his oste onane þay assailede þam. Bot Alexander & his men, what wit arowes whate wit speres & nettes slew a grete multitude of þam, and 8 þe remenaunt of þam fledd here and thare in þe woddez.

¹ Fra thethynd þay went fourty dayes & come in-till a cham-
paynne cuntree, þat was all Barayne, and na hye place ne na
hilles myghte be sene on na syde. And as it ware aboute þe xj 12
houre of þe day, þare bigan so grete a wynde to blawe oute of
þe Este þat it blew doune to þe erthe all thaire tentis & paire
luges. And þare was grete disese ymang þe oste. For þe
wynde tuk fire-brandes oute of fyres þat þay hadd made, and 16
smate dyuerse men & brynte þam. And þan Alexander
knyghtes mournurede gretly & said amange þam, 'þe wrethe
& þe wreke of oure goddez,' quoth þay, 'falleþ apoñ vs, Bicause
we seke to ferre towarde þe sonð rysynge.' 'My wirchipfull 20
knyghtez,' quoth Alexander, 'bese * of gud ccmforthe and no
thyng ferde for this tempeste es nozte falleñ thurgh wrethe of
oure goddes bot be-cause of equinox of heruest.' When þe
wynde was cessed þay gadirde to-gedir þat þe wynd hadd 24
sparpled.

² Fra þeine þay went xxv days and come in-till a grene
valay, and þare þay lused þam. Than commanded Alexander
þat þay schuld make many fyres. For it began for to be vn- 28
sufferable calde. And thare be-gan for to falle grete flawghtis of
snawe, as þay had bene grete lokkes of wolfe. When Alex-
ander saw that, he was ferde þat it schuld nozte hafe cessed
sone, and bad his men þat þay suld tred down þe snawe & full 32
it wit paire fete. And paire fyres also helpe þam gretly. Neuer-
þe-lesse þare ware fyve hundrethe of þe Oste dedd thurgh þat
snawe, þe whilk Alexander gart bery. Þan þare felle a pass-
and grete rayne, and þe snaw cessed. Wit þe rayne, also, þare 36
come so thikke a myste, þat contenually three days to gedir þay

¹ Four lines with red capital F and small f in margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital F and small f in the margin beside.

saw na sonð. And oute of þe clude þat hange abowñ þañ per
 fell as it hadd' bene grete fyrebrandez þe whilk brynt many of
 thaire tenttis and of þaire luges. And onane Alexander offred'
 4 sacrafice till his goddez and bad his knyghtis put alde ryuend
 clathez wate bi-fore þe fire, and he made his prayere. And also
 soñ the whedir wexe clere & faire.

¹ Fra thethin, þay removed' and come till a grete ryuere þat
 8 es called' Ganges & þare þay lused þañ. And as þay loked'
 ouer on the toper syde, þay saw twa or thre meñ walke up &
 downñ þare. And Alexander badd' his meñ spirre þañ in þe
 langage of Inde what þey ware. And þay ansuered' & said,
 12 'We are Bragmayns,' quop þay. Alexander hadd' grete desyre
 to speke wit þe Bragmayns. Bot he myzte nozte wynñ ouer
 þe water; it was so depe & so brade Bot if it had bene in þe
 monethe of July and Auguste. And also it was full of ypotaynes
 16 & scorpyones and cocadrilles, out takenñ in þe forsaid' monethes.
 And whenñ he saw þat he myghte on na wyse wynñ ouer he was
 rezte heuy. And belyfe he garte make a lyttill bate of redis, &
 couerde it wit nowtte hydys & gerte pykk it wele bathe wit-in &
 20 wit-owtteñ. And whenñ þe bate was made, he gert a knyght of
 his gang in-to it, and gaffe hym a lettre wit hym for to bere
 * to Dindimus, þat was kyng of þe Bragmayns, of whilk lettre þis
 was þe tenour.

24 ² Kyng of kynges and lorde of lordez, Alexander þe soñ of
 godd' Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, vn-to Dindimus kyng
 of Bragmayns, ioy. Euer señ we were comenñ to þat age þat
 we couthe discerne by-twix gud & ill we hafe desyred' soueraynly
 28 for to hafe wysdomme & konnyng, & for to putt away fra
 vs ignorance & vnconnyng. For as þe wise techyng of oure
 philosophres declares opynly, Eloquence wit owtteñ witt & wis-
 domñ dose ofte-sythes mare skathe þañ gude. Parefore we hafe
 32 wele vnderstandenñ by relacioñ of dyuerse meñ, þat 3our lyfe &
 3our maners are diuised' and diuerse fra all oþer meñ; so þat
 noþer oñ þe See ne on þe lande 3e seke na helpe and þat 3e
 3eme anoþer manere of doctryne þañ we hafe lerende of oure
 36 doctours. Whare-fore we pray 3ow þat 3e will certyfyte vs bi
 3our lettres of 3our lyffe and 3our maners and 3our doctryne. For

hundred
 have died.
 Then
 comes a
 great mist
 with the
 rain, out of
 which fall
 firebrands.
 Alexander
 offers sacri-
 fice to
 his gods
 and the
 weather
 becomes
 clear.

They come
 to the
 Ganges, on
 the other
 side of
 which are
 the Brahm-
 ans.
 They can-
 not cross
 because of
 the danger-
 ous beasts.
 He sends a
 knight
 over in a
 boat with a

* Leaf 32.

letter to
 Dindimus,
 king of the
 Brahmans.
 Alex-
 ander's
 letter to
 Dindimus,
 asking the
 Brahmans
 the reason
 for their
 strange
 manners,
 since he
 fain would
 learn wis-
 dom of
 them.

¹ Four lines with capital *F* and small *f*
 written in the margin beside.

² Four lines with capital *K* in red,
 and small *k* in the margin beside.

Since by giving another man goodness one loses no goodness oneself. He makes a comparison.

Dindimus' letter to Alexander.

Wisdom may be bought with no price.

* Leaf 32 bk.

He commends wisdom in Alexander as an Emperor. Their ways are other than those of the Greeks. The Greeks shall have no profit because of their warlikeness.

The Brahmins lead a simple life and eschew the worship of many gods. They do not till nor fish. They trust

peraventure we may take *pare* of *sum* gud Ensample, and *your* wysdome & *your* gudnesse neuer be *pe* lesse. For it es na harme till a mañ thurgh his gudnes to make anoþer mañ gude as he es. The whilk I may proue bi this simylytud—I supposse a mañ hadd⁴ in his hand a lyght candill, many oþer candills may be lyghted *pare* at, & it lose na-thinge of his lyghte. And riȝte so it es of *pe* gudnesse of a mañ. For many meñ may take gude ensample of hym & his gudnesse be na thyng enmenuste *pareby*. Wherefore ȝitt eft-sons we pray ȝow þat wit-owtten any taryng or delay, ȝe schowe vs *pe* maners of *your* lyffing.' Than kyng Dindimus resaffed þis *lettre* wirchipfully and wrate anoþer agayne of this tenour.

¹ Dyndimus maister of *pe* Bragmayns vn-to kyng Alexander ioy & gretynge. We hafe wele vnderstanden by *pe* tenour of thi *lettres*, þat þou desyres gretly for to hafe *verray* connyng and *perfitt* wysdom; *pe* whilke are mekil better þan any kyngdom; for þay may neuer be boghte wit na pryce, wherefore I comend *pe* gretly, knawyng þat þou arte a wyse mañ. For ane Emperour wit-owtten * *wisdom*, es noghte lorde of his subiectis, Bot his sugettis ere lordes of hym. ȝe wrate vntill vs, praying vs for to schewe ȝowe oure maners of lyffynge, ilke a poynte efter oþer, *pe* whilke we halde impossible for to doo. For oure maner of lyffynge es full ferre dyuerse fra ȝours. For noþer we wirchipe *pe* goddes þat ȝe wirchipe, ne ledis *pe* lyfe þat ȝe lede. And if I writte ȝowe oughte of oure maner of lyffing, ȝe may hafe na sauoure *pare* in, be-cause ȝe are besily ocupied wit dedis of armes. Neuer-þe-lesse þat ȝe say noȝte þat I layne oure lyfe fra ȝow for envy, Als mekil as comeȝ to my mynde at þis tyme I sail writt vnto ȝow of oure maners.

² We Bragmayns ledeȝ a symple lyfe & a clene and *pe* wirchipyng of many goddes we eschu. We do na synnes ne we will hafe na mare þan resoñ of kynde asches. All thynges we suffer & þat, say we, es necessary & ynoghe, þat es noȝte ouermekil. We tilte na lande, ne eryes, ne sawes, ne ȝokes noþer ox ne horse in plughe ne in carte. Ne nett caste we nane in see, for to take fysche; Ne huntynge ne fewlynge vse we

¹ Four lines with capital *D* in red, and small *d* in margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *W*, and small *w* in margin.

nanne. Mete & drynke hafe we ynoghe, and oper mete seke we
 nane, bot pat þe erthe oure allere moder wit-owtten mannes
 labour brynges furthe. Wit swilke metis we fill oure wambes,
 4 whilke nuzes vs nozte, ne na harme dose. And zit of swilke
 metis we fill nozte oure bodis to full. For amangez vs it es an
 vn-semely thyng & an vn-leefull to see a grete-belyed' mañ.
 And þare-for ere we all oure lyfe tym̄ wit-owtten sekenesse
 8 & lyffe; lang & alwaye are in gude hele till oure lyffes ende.
 We vse neuer-mare na medecyns ne sekas na helpe for þe hele of
 oure bodys. At a terme of deede endes oure lyfes, for ane of vs
 leues na langere þañ añ-oper, Bot efter þe order of þe birthe of
 12 mañ, þe terme of deede comes till ilke a mañ. Thare comez
 nane of vs at na fire for na calde, ne clathez comez þare nane
 apoñ vs, Bot alway we ga naked. We fulfill neuer þe desyres
 of oure bodys. Thurgh pacyence we suffree all thynges. All
 16 oure inwarde enemys we slaa, So pat we drede nane enemys
 wit-owtten. For lightlyer es a citee or a casteñ taken þat es
 ensegged' bathe wit inwarde enemys & wit-owtten, þañ þat þat
 es ensegged' allanly wit owtwarde enemys. Bot þou, emperour,
 20 feghtes agaynes owtwardez enemys for [to] foster & nuresche thyñ
 inwardez enemys, þe whilke ere fendes of heñe. We Bragmayns
 has slayne all oure inwardez enemys and þarefore we drede nane
 owtwarde enemys ne nane helpe sekas for to hafe agayne; þañ*
 24 noþer be see ne be land. Bot we ere always sewre ynoghe,
 and lyffe; wit-owtten any drede. Oure bodys we hiff wit
 þe leues of trees and þe fruyte of þañ we ete. We ete mylke
 also and drynkes water of a gude ryuere or of swete welles.
 28 We wirchippe a godd, and till hym alwaye we zelde lonynges.
 We desire þe life of þe werlde þat es to come, and vs liste nozte
 here þe þyng þat turnez to na profett. We spekke nozte
 mekil, Bot when we ere artede for to speke we say nozte bot
 32 þe sothe, and onane we halde vs stille. Reches luffe we nozte.
 Couetise es a thyng þat may nozte be filled; þe whilke osten-
 sythez brynges a mañ till a mescheuous ende. Wrethe ne
 envie es þare nane amangez vs, ne nane of vs es strangere þañ
 36 anoþer. Of the pouert þat we hafe we ere riche, for we hafe it
 in comon. We strife neuer mare, ne beres neuer wapeñ. We
 bere peesse ilkañ till oper of custom, nozte thurgh vertu.
 Domes hafe we nane amanges vs, for we do nane ill, whare-fore

to mother
 earth.
 They use
 such meats
 as do them
 no harm,
 nor do they
 eat too
 much, and
 there are
 no great-
 bellied men
 amongst
 them. They
 have no
 sickness
 nor medi-
 cines. They
 live the
 fixed term
 of life.
 They have
 no fire for
 cold. They
 conquer
 themselves.
 Alexander
 conquers
 others and
 is con-
 quered by
 his inner
 enemies.
 Therefore
 do the
 Brahmins
 * Leaf 33
 dread no
 foes. They
 are clad in
 leaves and
 drink
 water.
 They wor-
 ship one
 god and
 desire eter-
 nal life.
 They love
 not long
 speech nor
 covetous-
 ness.
 They are
 all of equal
 might and
 riches, and
 bear no
 weapons.
 Neither
 have they
 dooms, for
 they do no
 ill.

Neither need they mercy. They have no avarice, adultery, or lechery, and have therefore no penance or sudden death.

They are arrayed in no bright clothes.

They always keep to the same trades. They use no baths.

They will make no other man serve them.

They have no houses nor vessels, but live in caves and crags. They sleep on the earth.

* Leaf 33 bk.

Their houses become their graves.

They sail not the seas for trade.

They seek no eloquence but rather simplicity of speech. They have no philosophers, for such are liars and of unsteady speech.

But in their schools they learn wisdom and righteousness. They love not plays.

we schulde be called vn-to dome. A law *pare es pat es* contrary til oure kynde. For we do na mercy, bi-cause we do no thyng wharefore we sulde aske mercy. We do na labour *pat pertenez* to couetise or auarice. We giffe nozte oure bodyse to lechorye, 4 we do nane advowtrye, ne we do na synn wharefore vs sulde nede to do penance. We fynde na fawte in na thyng, For we all does that *pat* righte es. We dye na sodeyne dede, For thurgh foule dedis we corupte nozte *pe* ayere. We vse na 8 clathes *pat* are littede of *dyuerse* coloures. Oure wiffes ne are nozte gayly arayed for to plesse vs. Ne wit *pañ* we comon nozte bi-cause of luste of lecherye, bot bi-cause of childe getyng. Our wyffes sekis na *noþer* clethyng, *pañ* *pe* forluke of godd 12 hase granted *pañ*. And whaa dare take apouñ *hym* for to change his wirkyng, an heghe syn vs thynke it ware till any mañ for to presume to do it. Baththis vse we nane, ne warme water to wasche oure bodys wit all. *pe* Soñ mynistres vs hete, 16 and *pe* dewe of *pe* ayer ministrez vs moyster & wete. We hafe na thoghte of na thyng, ne we schewe na lordechipe abownd *oper* men *pat* ere lyke vn-till us. For a grete crueltee we halde it to constreyne a mañ to serue vs, whayme kynde & 20 *pe* forluke of godd hase made oure *broþer* als fre als we are. We brynne na stanes for to make lyme off and *pare-wit* to make vs howses at dueñe in, and curiouse palasez: ne vessel make we nane. In caues or creuycez of craggis we duelle, whare thare 24 comez na noyse of wyndes * ne whare vs thare drede na rayne. On *pe* erthe we slepe wit-owtten any besynesse. Swilk howses we hafe; in *pe* whilke, whils we lyffe, we dueñe, and whien we dye, *pay* ere oure graues. We sayle nozte in 28 *pe* see aboute na merchandyse, in *pe* whilke *pay* suffre many perills *pat* sayles *parein* & many *meruaylles* can tell offe. The crafte of Eloquence & faire speche, lere we nozte for to polishe oure wordes; Bot thurgh *pe* sympilnesse *pat* we hafe 32 *pat* suffres vs nozte to lye, all oure speche we speke. Scoles of philosophres haunt wee nozte, whase *techechynges* es alway discordand & na thyng certayne, ne stabill diffines, bot for *pe* mare partye lyes. Bot *pa* scoles we haunte in *pe* 36 whilke we lere to lyffe vertuosly and also thynges *pat* teches vs for to do no wrange to no mañ. Bot after verrey rightwisnesse to helpe ilk mañ at oure powere. Plays lufe we nane.

Bot if vs liste hafe any disporte we take & rede; þe lyfes
 & þe dedis of oure Auncestres, and oure predicessours. And
 if we fynde any thyng in þam þat es cause of laughtre
 4 par-at we wepe & makes dole. Neuer-þe-lesse we behalde
 oþer thynges of þe whilke oure hertis ere gladdide and grete
 lykyng has, þat es at say, heuen-schyne wit sternes wit-owt
 nowmer; þe soñ faire & bryghte, of whase bryghtnesse all
 8 þe werlde takes lyghte and hete. The see we se alwaye
 of purpoure coloure, and when tempestes rysez þare-in it dis-
 truyes nozte þe land þat es nere it, as it does in 3oure
 partes. Bot he embrace; it as his sister and gase aboute it.
 12 And in þe se we see many dyuerse kynde; of Fisches,
 Delphines & porpase; layke þam. We hafe lykyng also for
 to bihalde faire feldes alouer floresched wit flores of þe whilke
 a swete reflaire enters in-till oure nose; in þe whilke
 16 a sensible saule hase maste delite. Also we delit vs in faire
 place; of wodde; & of swete welles whare we here swete
 sange; of fewles. This customs hafe we al-way, þe whilke, &
 þou walde halde nozte bot a while, we trowe þou suld thynke
 20 þam rihte hard. Blame nozte me, for all þat þou requerede
 me be þi lettres I send þe wretyn. Neuer-þe-less, and it
 sulde nozt displese the, I walde tell þe a littill of oure
 doctryne þe whilke makes oure lyfe to seme harde vn-to þe.
 24 3ee hafe wit-in a schorte while conquered & made sugete
 vn-to 3our empire all Asy, Europe, & Affryke. As 3our selfe
 hase¹ sayde * 3e make þe lighte of þe soñ to faile, when 3e
 seke þe termes of his course thurgh werre. 3e ete all manere
 28 of thynges² þat come; till hande, And 3our vesages seme; as
 3e ware fastande & hungry. 3e slaa 3our childe makande
 sacrafice of þam to Mawmetes. 3e sawe discorde bi-twix
 kynges and thase þat schulde be meke 3e stirre for to be
 32 powde. 3e make meñ to thynke þat grete space of landes
 sufice; þam nozte And so pay seke duellynge place; of heuen.
 'Also thurgh 3our goddes 3e do many ill dedis, as pay didd
 þam selfe, Ensampl of Iubiter 3our godd & of Proserpyna þat
 36 3e wirchiþe as a goddess. For Iubiter defouled many mens

But they rather read of the lives and deeds of their forefathers and weep if there be any cause for laughter. They are glad in the brightness of nature and its delights. He will tell Alexander a little of their doctrine. Alexander has conquered the world, and made the sun pale. The visages of his men grow thin and hungry. They offer their children to Mawmets. Alexander sows
 * Leaf 34- discord between kings and ever desires more ground. The gods of the Greeks do ill deeds and they are fools that serve such. The Greeks fain con-

¹ Scribblings at the bottom of leaf 33 bk. :- 'P.', 'G.' below the P., then 'H. Amen. Do For'.

² Scribe originally wrote *thynges*, but changed the *k* into a *g*, thus *thynges*.

quer other men.

They change their laws, and do but hold with fine speech, loving gold and silver and rich things. The Greeks live in glutony and fall sick.

The wisdom of the Brahmins surpasses all that of the Greeks. They burn the bodies of the dead and do not give back to earth what earth has given forth. The Brahmins slay no beasts in the worship of God, neither do they have gold nor silver nor precious things in His service, since for none of these things does God hear man, but only for his good works. Prayer is the word and the word is God. Therefore are the Greeks fools, holding themselves
* Leaf 34 bk. heavenly and thinking they communicate with God whilst they defile

wyfes, and Proserpyna made many meñ to do advowtry wit hir. Full wreched & full hye fules pay ere, þat swilke goddes wirchipes. 3e will nozte suffer meñ lyfe in þaire awenð libertee bot makes þam̄ 3our thralles & 3our sugetes. 3e deme 4 nozte riztwisly, 3e gerre 3our iugez change 3our lawes as 3ow liste. 3e say many thynges þat sulde be donne, bot 3e do þam̄ nozte. 3e halde na mañ wysse bot hym þat hase Eloquence of speche. 3e hase all 3our witt in 3our tungez, and all 3our 8 wysdome es in 3our mouthe. 3e lufe golde & siluer & gaders þam to-gedir and desyre3 to hase grete howsez & hye, and grete multitude of seruandez. 3e ete & drynk to mekill, so þat oftymes 3our stomake thurgh grete repleccion es greued & many 12 sekenesse þare-thurgh 3e fall in, & so ofte sythes dyes before 3our tyme. 3e wolde euer-mare halde 3our reches and all thynges þat 3e may gete. Bot all thynges at þe laste leues 3ow. Þe wysdom̄ allanly of þe Bragmayns passe3 all 3our witt & 16 3our wysdom̄. For, & we wele consedere, þe same moder þat broghte forthe stanes & trees, of þe same was bathe oure bygynnyng & 3ours. 3e honowre 3our Sepultours curyously wit golde & syluer, and in vesselle made of precyouse stanes 3e putt 20 þe asse of 3our bodys, when̄ pay ere brynned. And what may be werre þam̄ for till take þe banes, þat þe erthe sulde hase, for to ga brynd þam̄, and nozte suffere þe erthe resayffe his element þe whilke he broghte forthe.

24
'We sla na bestez in þe wirchipe of goddez. Nee temples make we nane, for to sett in ymage3 of golde or of siluere in þe name of false goddez, as 3e do; ne awters of golde and of precious stanes. 3e hase swilke a lawe for to honoure 3our 28 goddez wit 3our gudes for þat pay saff here 3our prayers. Bot we vnderstande & wate wele þat noper for golde ne siluer; ne for þe blode of calues nor gayte ne schepe Godd' heres any mañ. Bot for gude werkes þe whilke Godd' lufes, and thurgh 32 þe wordes of deuote prayere. Godd' wiff here a mañ for þe worde. For thurgh worde we ere lyke to Godd'. For Godd' es worde,* and þat worde made all þe werlde aud thurgh þat worde all thynges hase beyng, Mouyng & lyfe. That worde wirchipe 36 wee and lufes & honowres. Godd' es a spirite. And he lufes na-thing bot þat that es clene. Whare-fore we halde 3ow full grete foles, that wenez 3our kynde be heuenly, and þat 3e hase

communicaciō with Godd; And neuer-pe-less files *your* kynde wit advowtries & fornicacions & seruyce of Mawmettis & false goddis, and many oper wikkede dedis: ilke a day pis ze do.

4 Pis ze luffe, and *parefore* when ze ere dede ye sail suffere *tourmentis* wit-owtten nowmer. Ze wene pat Godd will be mercyable vn-to *zow* bi-cause pat ze offre hym blode & flesse of *dyuerse* bestez. Bot we on pe contrarye wyse luffez clenness bathed of

8 Body & of saule, so pat we mowe hafe after pis lyfe ioy pat neuer sail hafe ende.

'Ze serue nozte a Godd pat regnez in heuen, Bot ze do seruyce to many false goddis. For als so many membris, als ze hafe on

12 *your* bodys, als many goddis ze wirchipe & serues: For ze casse a mañ pe lesse werlde, and rihte as a mañ here hase many lymmes, so ze say *pare* are many goddes in heuen. Ze say Iuno es godd of pe hert, bi-cause he was wonder angry; and Mars ze

16 say es godd of pe breste, bi-cause he was prynce of Batells. Mercury ze casse godd of pe tung, bi-cause he was wonder euloquent in spekyng. Hercules ze trowe be godd of pe armes, Bi-cause he did twelfe passande dedes of armes. Ze trowe

20 Bacus be godd of pe throtte, for he fande firste drounkynnesse. Couetise, ze say, es godd of pe lyuer, for he was pe firste lechoure pat euer was. And ze say pat he hase in his hande a byrnannd fyrebrande where-wit he styrres pe luste of lechery. Cereris

24 ze casse godd of pe wambe, bi-cause scho was pe firste Fynder of wheete. And Venus, be-cause scho was moder of lechery, ze say scho es godd of pe preuee membres of mañ & womañ. Mynerua, bi-cause scho was fynder of many werkes, ze say

28 wisdomer ristez in her, and *pare-fore* ze call hir godd of pe heued. And on pis wyse all pe body of mañ ze deuyde in goddes, & na party *pareoffe* ze lefe in *your* awen powere. Ne ze trowe nozte that a godd pat es in heuen made *your* bodys of noghte.

32 False goddes ze wirchipe pat sail brynge *zow* to thralledome & schame & schenchiþe, and to thayñ ze make sacrifice & tribute payes. Vn-to Mars ze offere a Bare. To Bacus ze offere a gayte; To Iune a pacoke; To Iubiter a Bulle; To

36 Appollo * a swane¹; To Venus a doufe; To Mynerua ane owle; To Cereris floure; To Mercury hony. And Hercules ze onowren wit floures & grene braunches of tressesz. Pe temple

their own kind with foul sins and idolatry. When they die they shall suffer endless pain and their slain beasts avail them nought.

The Greeks serve not one God but many. They have for every human member a god.

The account of all the Greek gods and their evil doings.

Thus they give all their body over to numberless gods, not worshipping the one Creator, but rather false gods that bring them into thraldom. The sacrifices

¹ Bottom of leaf 34 swanne, top of leaf 35 swane.

which they offer to their gods. The gods become not their helpers but their tormentors, egging them on to all evils. Yet they must hearken to them.

Righteous punishment for the ill deeds of the Greeks.

The prayers of the Greeks are evil, so that they are harmed whether such be heard or not.

All the torments of hell are in the Greeks through their own vices.

And the bodies of the Greeks are a living hell.

of Couetyse 3e enourne wit rose3. Alfe 3our myghte & 3oure triste 3e putt in þam þat may 3ow na-thing helpe at nede. Now sothely 3e pray þam̄ no3te to be 3our helpers, Bot 3oure *tourmentours*. For it byhoues nedis be þat, als many 4 goddes als 3e wircPIPE & gyffe3 þam̄ powere of 3our lymmes, als many *tourmente3* 3e suffere. Ane of 3our goddes stirres 3ow to fornycacion. Ane oþer to ete & drynke to mekiſt, and anoþer to feghte & stryffe. All ere þay 3our lordes, and to 8 þam̄ 3e obey & serues and wircPIPES. So þat wonder it es þat 3our wrechid' bodys fayles no3te for þe many seruyce3 þat 3e do to so many goddes. And gud ri3te it es þat 3e *serue* swilke goddes bi-cause of þe many wikkede dedis þat 3e do. 12 And for 3e wiff no3te cesse of 3our iſt dedis, *parefore* 3e *serue* swilke goddes tiſt 3our awenēd harme, For euermare þay desyre þat 3e do iſt. If 3our goddes here 3ow wheñ 3e pray to þam, þay do 3ow harme in 3our conscience. For þat that 3e pray 16 fore es iſt. And if þay here 3ow noghte, þam̄ ere þay contrarye to 3our desyres. Wharefore whethir þay here 3ow, or þay here 3ow noghte, euer-mare þay do 3ow disesse. Þise ere þa¹ *tourmente3* þat oure doctours talde vs offe, þat here in this 20 werlde *tourmente3* 3ow as 3e ware dede. For, and 3e *consyder* wele, *pare* may no man suffere wers *tourment* þam̄ 3e doo. For all þe takens þat oure doctours telle3 vs ere in helle, and we see þam̄ in 3owe.² *Pare* are many paynes in helle, 24 3e suffre paynes when 3e wake for to do advowtres, fornycacion, & thiftes, mañ-slawghters. And namely, þat 3e bee filled' of werldly reches; 3a, & of werldly rechesse. For oure doctours says, *pare* es in helle so mekiſt thriste, þat it may 28 neuer be slokend'; and 3e haue so grete Couetyse of worldely reches þat 3e may neuer be full. Þay say also þat in helle *pare* es a hunde þat es callede *Cerberus* þe whilke hase thre heuedes; And if 3ee *conseder* ry3te, 3our wambes are lyke *Cerberus*. 32 For mekiſt etyng & drynkyng, þay say also, *pare* es³ in helle a maner of nedder þat es called' *Idra*. And 3e for þe many vice3, þat 3e hafe bicause of 3our full wambe3 may be callede *Idra*. Wharefore & we bi-helde wele all þe illes þat 36

¹ MS. reads *pa*.

² in 3owe inserted in the right-hand margin by the same scribe.

³ MS. twice over, *pare* es.

are in helle, þay dueſte in ʒow. * Waa es ʒow, wreches, þat swilke a mysbileue haldeſ; whare-fore after þis lyfe, ʒe moñ suffere paynes wit-owtten̄ nowmer.' When̄ Alexander hadd' redd' þis
 4 *lettre*, he was wonder wrathe, be-cause of iniury of his goddez. Neuer-þe-less, be-lyfe he gart write anoper agayne of this tenour.

1 'Kyng of kynges, and lorde of lordez, Alexander þe soñ of
 8 godd' Amoñ and of þe quene Olympias, to Dindimus, kyng of þe Bragmayns, gretyng. If all be fuñ trew amanges ʒow þat þou hase sent wretyñ in thy *lettres*, þañ allanly ʒe are gude meñ in þis werlde; for as þou says ʒe do nañ ill.
 12 Bot wit þou wele² for certayne, þat þis maner of lyffyng *commez* nozte of vertu bot of custoñ. All thynges þat we do, ʒe saye es synñ. And all þe craſtez, þat ere amangez vs on þe same wyse, ʒe say, þay ere synnes. ʒe wilt distroye all þe
 16 customs þat mañ-kynde hedir-towarde hase hadd' & vsed. Owther ʒe schew bi ʒour wordez, þat ʒe are goddez, or ellis till goddes ʒe hafe envy. And þare-fore ʒe say, as ʒe say, I may nozt write to ʒow all þe order of ʒour lyffyng. Bot als mekill þare-offe
 20 als I may vnderstande at this tyme, I sall writte vn-to ʒow. ʒee say ʒe vse nozte for to till þe erthe, ne sawe na corne, ne plante na vynes, ne sett na trees, na to make na faire howsez. And þe cause here-of as it wele semes es for ʒe hafe na Iren̄,
 24 whare-of ʒe myghte make ʒow tuyles for to wirke with-alle. And þare-fore ʒow by-houes nedes ett herbes & lede an harde lyfe, ryzte as bestez. For ʒe may nowþer gette brede ne flesche ne fysche. Does nozt wolves oñ þe same wyse, þe whilke, when̄
 28 þay may nozte gete þaire fill of flesche, þay fill þaire belys of þe erthe? And it ware lesuff or lykande to ʒow to come till oure cuntree, we sulde lere na wisdom̄ of ʒoure nede. And þare-fore late ʒour hunger habyde at hame in ʒour awenñ cuntree.
 32 þat mañ es nozte mekills at commend' þat alwayes lyffes in disesse. Bot he es gretly to commend', þat in reches lyffez attemperally. Bot and meñ schulde be commendid' þat are oppressed' wit disesse, þañ sulde blynd meñ, leprouse meñ,
 36 & oper swilke ouer all oper be commendid'; þe blynde, for he sees nozt at desyre; þe pouer, for he hase nozte at do. And we walde make oure duellynge in ʒour cuntree we sulde suffere

* Leaf 35 bk. Woe to the Greeks. Alexander is angry at this letter, and replies to Dindimus.

If it be as Dindimus says, then truly the Brahmins only are good. Yet the Brahmins do this through custom, eschewing all civilization, and envy of the gods.

Their sparingness and virtues come from their poverty and the pooriness of their country.

They are even as wolves.

If they come to Greece the Greeks should learn naught of them, so let them abide at home.

Poverty is not to be praised, but temperance in riches, nor are the maimed to be praised that they

¹ Five lines spaced red capital *K* with small *k* in the margin beside.

² Bot wit þou wele repeated in MS.

do no ill,
since their
defect

* Leaf 36.
hinders
them.
Their chas-
tity is due
to want of
food.
But the
Brahmins
live as mere
beasts.

The Brah-
mins seek
no learn-
ing, having
beastlike
no feeling
or delight
in good.
But men
can rejoice
through
free will.
The
changes of
the world
and of the
ages of
man are
even as the
day
brightens
and
darkens,
even as a
child is
simple,
youth pre-
sumptuous,
and old age
stable.
Who will
look for the
opposite?
The de-
lights of the
senses and
of those
things
given us by
earth, sea,
and sky.
Abstinence
from this is

pouert & wrechidnes riȝte as ȝe do. ȝe say also þat ȝour wyfes vseȝ na prowde aray for to plese þaire husbandeȝ, and þe cause es for þay hafe na noȝer * thyng for till araye þam̄ wit.¹ Also ȝe say ȝe do nane advowtries ne fornycacions. And þat es na 4 meruaile! For-whi, how sulde þay hafe luste to lechery þat etes noȝte. Luste of lechery es noȝte comonly, bot yf it come of hete of þe leuer or ellis of habudance of mete & drynke. Bot ȝe ete na-thinge bot herbes & roteȝ, as ȝe ware swyne, 8 & drynkes water & vnnethes may ȝe sloken ȝour hunger and þarefore ȝe hafe nan̄ appitite to womēn.

ȝe hafe na liste to studie aboute lerynge, ne ȝe seke na mercy ne dees nane till oȝer. And all this ȝe hafe in comōn 12 wit besteȝ. For riȝte as besteȝ hase nowȝer resoñ ne discreciōn, ne hase na felynge of gude, riȝte so þay hafe na delite in gode. Bot till vs resonable meñ þat has free will of kynde ere many lykynges & blandeschyngeȝ granted. For it es im-possible þat 16 þis werlde wyde & brade sulde noȝte hafe suñ chaungynge of gouernance; So þat ne after heuyness & sorowe, Ioy & myrthe sulde noȝte folowe.² For-why manes will es variable & changeable þat changeȝ wit þe heuen̄ abownd. On þe same wyse 20 manes hert es dyuerse. For when̄ þe day es clere, manes hert es gladdē & blythe. And when̄ þe day es derke, manes wittis are derke & duffe & heuy. Also meñ changeȝ thurgh dyuerse ages. For barnehed̄ reioyse it in sympilnesse, ȝouthede in 24 presumptuosnes, And grete elde in stabilnes. For wha will luke efter wysdome in a childe, In a ȝunge mañ stabillnes, or in an alde mañ wildenes? Many delitable thynges comeȝ till oure mynde. For suñ we See wit oure eghne; Suñ we hafe 28 thurgh herynge; Suñ we fele thurgh smellyng; Suñ thurgh tastynge; and Suñ thurgh towchynge. Sumtyme we hafe delite in salutacions & swete sangeȝ & melodys of dyuerse Instrumenteȝ. Of þe erthe we hafe al maner of gud fruyteȝ; 32 of þe see we hafe habundance of fysche, and of þe ayere delyte of fewles of dyuerse kyndis. If þou abstene þe fra all thies owthir it es for pride or for envy. For pride, þat þou dispyseȝ swilke precyouse gifteȝ. For envy bi-cause þay ere noȝte gyffen 36 ȝow, as þat þay ere to vs. Bot efter myñ opynyoñ I deme þat

¹ Leaf 35 þam wit; leaf 36 þam wit.

² The second vowel in *folowe* is difficult to read. It looks like *folewe*.

your lyffing and your maners commes mare of foundnesse þan
of wysdom. For seð 3e are meñ 3e schulde hafe þe vertu3 of
a resonable creature, and þat hafe 3e no3hte.' When Dindimus
4 hadd redd' þis *lettre*, onane he wrate anoper to kyng Alexander
of þis tenour.

due either to
pride or
peevishness.

He deems the
Brahmins live
so through
folly.

Dindimus to
Alexander.

* Leaf 36 bk.

Man is not
lord of this
world, but a
pilgrim in it.
The virtue of
the Brahmins.

God made
things di-
verse so that
the world
might endure.

He gave man
free will to
choose of all
that which
him list. Not
they, but the
Greeks, seem
envious of
the gods.

1 'Dyndimus, þe mayster of þe Bragmayns, vn-till Alexander,
gretyng. We hafe vndirstand þe tenour of þi *lettres* & þus we
8 ansuere. We er no3te * lordez of this werlde, as we sulde euermare
lyffe þare in. But we ere pilgrymes in þis werlde, and wheñ
dede comme3 we wende till oper habytacions. Oure Synnez
greue3 vs no3te, ne we duelle no3te in þe tabernacles of
12 synners.² We do na thyfte. And for þe *conscyence* þat we
haue, we gaa no3te furthe in open. We say no3te þat we ere
goddes, ne nane envy hase vn-to þam. Godd' þat made all þat
es in þis werlde, he ordeyned' many diuerse thynges. For
16 warne dyuersitees ware of thynges þe werld my3te noghte
stande. Godd' gaffe mañ fre will, for to discerne of all thynges
þat ere in þe werld, and chese whilke hym lyste. Whare-fore
he þat leues þe ill & chese3 þe gude, no3te godd'; but goddes
20 frende he may be called. Be-cause þat we lyffe contently,
and in quiete & reste, 3e say þat we ere goddez, or elles
þat we hafe envy to goddez. But this suspeccion þat 3e
hafe of vs, pertenez to 3ow. For 3e þat ere blawen full of
24 þe wynde of pride 3e aray 3our bodys wit glorious clethyng,
and on 3our fyngers, 3e putt iowells of golde & precyous
stones.

'Bot I pray 3ow, what profit does þis 3ow: Golde and siluer
28 saues no3te a manes saule, ne sustenez no3te mens bodys. Bot
we þat knawes þe verray profit of golde, and þe kynd' þare-
offe, when vs thristez, & gase to þe ryuere for to take vs a
drynke, if we fynde golde in þe way, we trede apouñ it wit oure
32 fete. For golde noper fille3 vs wheñ we hunger, ne slokens
oure thriste, ne it hele3 no3te a mañ þat es seke. If a mañ
thriste & drynke water, it puttez away his thriste. Also if a
mañ hunger & ete mete, it does away his hunger. Bot and
36 golde ware of þe same kynde, als soñ als a mañ hadd' it, þe vice
of Couetyse suld be slokynde in hym. Be þis cause es golde iff.

Gold and
silver save
none. They
despise it as
useless,
quenching
neither
hunger nor
thirst.

Neither does
it slack the
vice of
covetousness.

¹ Two lines with small red capital *D* and small cursive *d* in the margin beside.

² MS. *synners* with a contraction mark over the *y*.

The more one has the more one desires. The Greeks worship wicked men, being themselves wicked, offering up beasts to their idols. Thus do they, who shall die, honour themselves.

For ay þe mare þat a mañ hase þare-offe, þe mare he couetes. Wikkede meñ are wyrchippede amange; 3ow. For comonly a mañ luffes hym þat es lyke till hym selfeñ. 3e say þat godd' takes nane hede till dedly thynges. And neuer-þe-lesse 3e bygge 4 temples, and makes autres in þam, and settis vp mawmettes abownd þam, and grete delyte hase when bestes ere offerde, & in þam, and at 3our name es noysede, þis was done to þi fader, to thyñ Eldfader, & till aff thi progenytours. And þe 8 same also es highte on-to þe. Wit swilke wirchipes þay ere rewarded, þat knawes nozte þam selfe dedly.' When Alexander hadd' redd' þis lettre onane he sente anoper agayne and that was of this tenour þe whilk þat folowes.¹

* Leaf 37. Alexander to Dindimus. The Brahmins live as they do because they do not mingle with other men, but are shut off from them. They suffer even as those who lie in prison. He holds them as wretched fools, and could he but do it would march towards them with an army to make them leave their miserable life and become warriors.

² * Alexander, þe son of godd' Amoñ & of þe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes, vn-to Dyndimus kyng of þe Bragmayns we sende. For als mekiñ als 3our duellynge es in þat partye of þe werlde fra þe begynnyng, where na strangers 16 may com to 3ow, bot if it be rihte fewe, ne 3e may nozte passe forthe of 3our cuntree, but als swa say 3e, are parred' in, and na ferrere may passe; þarefore 3e magnyfy 3our manere of lyffyng and suppose þat 3e are blyssed' be-cause þat 3e er so spered' in, 20 þat if 3e walde neuer so gladly passe furthe for to lere þe customes þat oper meñ vse, 3e may nozte; and nytt-3e witt-3e, 3ow by-houez nedis suffere þat caytefftee þat 3e lyffe in. Wherefore it semez bi 3our techyng, that þay þat liggez in preson, 24 are als mekiñ at comend' als 3e, þe whilke vn-to paire lyues ende suffres sorowe and nede. And as me thynke, þe gudnesse þat 3e ruse 3ow offe, may wele be lykkened' to þe paynes of þaim þat ere in preson. And so þat that oure lawe demes to be done t[i]ll wikked' 28 meñ, 3e suffere kyndely. And þare-fore hym þat we halde wyse, 3e halde an Ebbere fule³. Sothely me thynk 3our lyffyng es nozte blyssed' bot wrechid' and as it ware a chastying to 3owe. I swere 3ow by oure goddez of myghte, þat, & I myghte come 32 to 3ow with an oste, I sulde gare 3ow leue 3our wrechid' lyfe, and by-come meñ of armes, als many of 3ow als ware able.' When Alexander had' sent this lettre till Dyndimus he gart

¹ The second vowel of *folowes* is often written so small as to render it uncertain whether it is an *o* or *e*.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

³ *fou* written in MS. before *fule* and scratched out. This word *fon* or *fou* was complete and not a half-written word, as the MS. shows.

rayse vp a pelare of Marble a wonder grete, & an heghe, and gart writt *pare*-apon this title wit *lettres* of grewe, of latyne, and of þe langage of Inde. 'I Alexander, Philipp son of Macedoyne, after þe discomfytour & þe dedd of Darius & Porus come on werre vn-to this place.'

¹ Fra þeine kyng Alexander & his Oste remowed & come intiff a felde, þat was called Actea & þare þay lugeð. Abowte
 8 þat felde was a thikke wodd of tresse berand fruyte; of þe whilke wilde men þat duelt in þe Same wodd v'sede for tiff hafe þaire fude, whase bodyes ware grete as geauntez, and þaire clethyng ware made of skynnes of dyuerse beste. And when
 12 þay saw Alexander Oste luge þare, onane þare come oute of þe wodd, a grete multitude of þam wit lange rodde in þaire handz & bi-gan for to feghte wit þe oste. And þan Alexander commanded þat all [þe] oste schulde sette vp a schowte at anes. And also
 16 sone als þe wyld* men herde þat² noyse, þay were wondere fered be-cause þay had neuer be-fore herde swilke a noyse. And than þay be-gan to flee hedir & thedir in þe wodd. And Alexander & his men persued þam and slewe of þam vi^o xxx iiij. And þay slew
 20 of Alexander knyghtes xxvij. In þat felde Alexander & his oste leugeð iij dayes and vetailed þam of þat fruyte þat growed in þe wodd.

³ Fra þeine þay remowed and come tiff a grete ryuer, & lugeð
 24 þam þare. And as it ware abowte none, þare come apou þam a wilde man, als mekiß als a geaunte. And he was rughe of hare all ouer, and his hede was lyke tiff a swyne, And his voyce also. And when Alexander saw hym, he bad his knyghtis tak
 28 hym & bryng hym bi-for hym. And when þay come abowte hym, he was na thyng fered, ne fledd nozte, bot stodd baldly bi-fore þam. And when Alexander saw that, he comanded þat þay sulde take a zonge damesell & nakken hir & sett hir bi-fore hym.
 32 And þay did soo. And onane, he ranne apou hir romyandd as he hadd bene wodd. Bot þe knyghtes wit grete deficultee refte hyr fra hym. And ay he romyed & made grete mane. And este þay bryghte hym tiff Alexander¹ and sett hym bi-fore hym.
 36 And Alexander wonderd gretly of his figure. And þan he

Alexander raised up a pillar and wrote his victories on it in Greek, Latin, and in the language of India.

They come to a forest full of wild men eating fruit and clothed in the skins of beasts. They fight Alexander with rods in their hands.

* Leaf 37 bk.

The Greeks put them to flight by shouting, and slay many of them.

They come to a great river and stay there. There they meet a wondrous wild man with a swine's head and voice.

They tempt him with a naked damsel and

¹ Four lines with red capital F.

² Five lines with large red F, small f

³ þat at the bottom of leaf 37 and þe at the top of leaf 37 bk.

beside.

then burn him alive. They come to a wondrous wood-land with trees that spring up in the day-time and at sunset sink back into the earth, with fruit of sweet smell but of bitter taste.

A knight takes of this, but is smitten dead by an evil spirit, and a voice proclaims the same to any that come nigh. In that

* Leaf 38.

place are tame birds, and who touches them is scorched by fire.

They come to a mountain, climb for 8 days, and at the top they fight dragons, etc. Going down they come into a dark valley with wondrous trees and streams, and a mountain with thick air.

gerte bynd' hym till a tree & make a fyre abowte hym & brynne hym. And so pay didd'. ¹ Fra peine pay removed & come till anoper felde in þe whilke þare ware growand' tresse, of a wonderfull heghte, and pay bigaṅ for to sprynge vp at þe soṅ rysynge ; 4 And' bi þe soṅ settinge pay wyted' a-way in-to þe erthe agayne. At þe firste houre of þe day pay bi-gaṅ to sprynge oute of þe erthe, & so pay wex ay to myddaye, and þaṅ pay bi-gaṅ to decrese. And by þe soṅ settinge pay ware in þe erthe agayne, 8 And was na thyng of þaṅ sene bi-fore oṅ þe morne. Þir tresse bare a fruyte wonder swete of reflayre bot pay [ware] bitter of taste. When Alexander saw þat fruyte he bade a knyghte bryng hym þareoffe. And he went & tuk þare-offe, and onane ¹² a wikked spirit smate hym, and be-lyfe he was dede. And þaṅ pay herd' a voyce in þe ayer þat said' on þis wyse: 'What maṅ so neghes þir tresse he saṅ dye onane.' Þare was also in þat felde fewles wonder meke & tame. Bot what maṅ so layde ¹⁶ nande on any of þam, onane þare come fire oute of þaṅ, & brynt hym riȝte greuoslly.

* ² Than pay removed' fra peine, And come till a Mountayne, þat was so hye, þat pay ware viij dayes in gangyng ar pay ²⁰ myȝte wyne to þe heghte þare-offe. And when' pay come to þe heghte of it, þare come agaynes þaṅ a grete multitude of dragones, Serpentes, and lyones þe whilke turmentid' Alexander & his meṅ reghte gretely. And at þe laste, pay askaped' paire ²⁴ daungere, and went doune of þe mountayne and come in-till a vaylay þat was so myrke þat vnnethes myghte ane of þaṅ See anoper. In þat depe valay ware tresse growand' of whilke þe fruyte & þe lefes ware wonder sauory in þe tastyng, and reueffis ²⁸ of water faire & clere. Aghte dayes contennelly pay saw na soṅ. And at þe viij days end' pay come to þe fote of a mountayne whare aṅ þe Oste thurgh a wikked thikk ayer ware so gretley dissed' þat pay ware in poynte to hafe bene choked' ³² þare-offe. And when' pay come a-bowṅ on þe mountayne, pay fande þe ayer mare soteff, and þe lighte of þe day mare clere. And þus pay ware wendand' vpwarde, oṅ þis Mountayne Elleueṅ, xj, days wit grete trauaile. And when' pay come to þe ³⁶

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *T* and

a dragon within, and the head of a dragon above with sting out.

hegheste of pis Mountayne, þay saw on þe toper syde faire weder
 & bryghte. And þān þay went dow̄n of pis Mountayne, and
 come in till a grete playne of whilke þe erthe was wonder rede.
 4 And in pis playne þare ware growande tresse wit-owtten̄
 nowmer; and þay passed nozte a cubit in heghte, & paire fruyte
 & paire lefes ware passandly swete as þay had bene fyges. And
 þay fande þare reueñs rihte many, of clere water as cristaffe.
 8 And it was als nureschand̄ to manes body, as it hadd̄ bene
 mylke wit-outen̄ eny oþer mete. Thurgh þat ilk playne þay
 went fourty .xl. days and þān þay com till wonder heghe
 Mountaynes; and it semed as þe toppes had towched þe firma-
 12 ment. And þir Mountaynes ware als brant vp-rihte as þay had
 bene walles. So þat þare was na clymbyng vpon þam. And at
 þe laste þay fande twa passagez be-twix, þase Mountaynes, of
 whilke, þe tane streched to-warde þe west, and þe toper towarde
 16 þe Este. Than Alexander demed̄ þat that dyuyson̄ be-twix þase
 Mountaynes was made thurgh̄ Noye flode. And þān þay went
 by þat passage þat streched to warde þe Este Seuen̄ days.
 And oñ þe heghten̄ .viiij. day þay fande a Basilisc þat meñ
 20 callez a Cocatrys, a grete & ane horrible. And bicause of his
 grete elde he was fouñ stynkand̄. * Pis ilke Basilisc was so
 venymous, þat nozte all anely thurgh̄ his stynke, bot also
 thurgh̄ his sighte allane, whaym̄ so he loked̄ oñ, he sulde dy
 24 onane; þān þe Macedoynes and þe persyenes,¹ as þay passede
 thurgh̄ þe strayt way dyed̄ thikk-falde thurgh̄ þe sighte of þat¹
 Basilisc. And when̄ Alexander knyghtis saw that perill, þay
 durste passe na farther bot said̄ amangez þān: 'Þe vertue of
 28 oure goddes,' quoth þay, 'es bifore vs, þat schewes vs þat we
 schulde ga na forthir.' Bot Alexander went bi hym ane vpon̄
 an heghe cragge, where he myghte see on̄ ferrome fra hym.
 And þān he saw this pestellencius beste þe Basilisc lygg
 32 slepande in myddes of þe passage. Þe kynde of hym was þat,
 als so sone als he felid̄ a mañ or a beste com̄ nere hym,
 for to open̄ his eghne & stare appoñ þān, and als many
 als he loked̄ oñ, solde sudaynly falle douñ & dye. When
 36 Alexander had sene hym, Be lyfe he went downne of þe²
 cragge, and gart sett a merke þat na mañ sulde passe. And

They climb
 this mountain
 for eleven days
 and then they
 come through
 clear weather
 into a land of
 red earth grow-
 ing dwarf trees
 with wonder-
 fully sweet
 fruit. And
 here they
 find crystal
 streams whose
 waters nourish
 as though they
 were milk.

They march
 through that
 plain forty
 days, and then
 they come to
 mountains
 whose tops
 reach the skies
 and in which
 were two
 passages, one
 towards the
 west and the
 other towards

* Leaf 38 bk.
 the east, which
 Alexander
 thinks were
 made by the
 Flood. They go
 east seven
 days.

On the
 eighth day
 they find a
 Basilisk that
 slays through
 look alone.
 He kills many.
 Alexander sur-
 veys him from
 afar off.

¹ þat inserted above the line by scribe.

² g first turned into c, then finally erased between þe and cragge.

Alexander approaches him shielded by a mirror, so that the Basilisk slays himself with his own glances.

pañ he gart a pavyssse be made seuēñ cubites of lenghte & foure oñ brede; and oñ þe vtter syde þare-offe he gart sett a grete Mirroure, And a large. And at þe nethir ende of þe pavisse he gart nayle a burde þe lenthe of a cubit for to couere 4 wit his legges, and his fete, so þat na party of hym myzte be sene. And þan Alexander tuk þis pavisse in his handis, and went towarde this Basilisc, and warned his meñ þat nañ of þañ sulde passe his termes. And when he come nere þe 8 basilisc, þe basilisc opynde his eghne. And wit a grete ire he bi-helde þe Mirroure and saw hym-selfe þare-in. And of þe reflexcion of þe bemes of his sighte strykande appoñ hym-selfe Sudanly he was dede. And when Alexander knewe wele þat 12 he was dede, he called tiff his knyghtis; And bad þañ come see hym þat slewe þaire felawes. And when þay come tiff hym, þay saw þe Basilisc dede. And þañ þay comended & prayssed gretyly his hardynesse and his hye witt, And went & 16 brynede þe Basilisc at þe commandement of Alexander.

The Basilisk being slain they burn him, and praise Alexander.

At last they found their way barred, and must come back to the plain. Then they went westward fifteen days and then to the left. They come to a mountain of adamant hung

* Leaf 39.

around with chains of gold and with sapphire steps.

Alexander goes up the mountain with twelve princes, and finds a wondrous palace of precious

¹ Fra þeine þay went tiff þey come to þe ferreste of þat waye; and ferrere myzte þay nozte wynñ. For þare ware so hye Mountaynes agaynes þañ and craggges like walles þat þay 20 myzte passe no forþer. And þañ þay turned agayne, and come to þe forsaide playne; and went by þat way þat streched towarde þe weste fyvftene .xv. days. And þañ þay lefte þat way, And turnede oñ þe lefte hande. And so þay went foure score 24

^{xx} ^{iiij} days, and at þe laste þay come tiff a Mountayne of adamande; and at þe fute þare-offe þare hange chynes of golde. Þis Mountayne hadd made * of saphyres twa thowsande 28 grez & a halfe, by þe whilke meñ ascendid to þe summit of þe Mountayne. And þare Alexander & his Oste luges þañ.

² And on þe morne Alexander Offerd sacrifice tiff his goddes, And þañ he tuk with hym xij twelue prynces of þe wyrchip- 32 fulleste þat he hade, and went vp bi þe forsaide grez till he come abouñ oñ þe Mountayne. And þare he fand a palace wonder faire and curiously wroghte; and it hade twelve zates and thre score & teñ wyndows. And þe lyntaflis bathe of þe 36 durs and of þe wyndows ware of fyñ golde, wele burnescht, and þat Palace was called þe howse of þe soñ. Þare was also

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A*.

a temple all of golde & of precious stanes, And bi-fore pe
 dores *pare-offe pare* was a vyne of golde, berande grapes of
 charbuncles, of Rubyes, Dyamandez, and many oþer maneres of
 4 *precyous stanes*. Það kyng Alexander & his princez went in-to
 þe palace; and fande *pare* a mañ liggand' in a bedd' of golde, and
 couerd' wit a riche clathe of golde. And he was rizte a mekiñ
 mañ and a faire, And his berde & his heued' ware als whitt
 8 als any wolfe; and *hym* semed' lyke a Bisshoppe. Als soñ als
 Alexander & his pryncez saw þis alde mañ pay knelid' dounne
 on paire kneesse and saluste hym. And he ansuerd' & saide:
 'Welcom' Alexander,' quop he, 'I telle the þou sañ see, þat neuer
 12 flescly mañ bi-fore this tyme sawe; And þou sañ here þat neuer
 erthly mañ herde are.' And Alexander ansuerd' & sayd': 'Maste
 blyssed' alde mañ,' quoth he, 'how hase þou knawying of me?'
 'For sothe,' quoth he, 'bi-fore Noy flode couerde all þe erthe,
 16 knewe I bathe the, & thi dedis. I wate wele þou desyres for
 to See þe haly treez of þe Soñ And þe Mone þe whilke tellez
 thynges þat ere to come.' 'Jaa for sothe,' quop Alexander,
 'þer es na-thinge þat I desyre mare, það for to see það.'
 20 And he was rizt gladd'. Það saide þe alde mañ tiñ *hym*:
 'And ze be clene of flescly dede wit women, það es it leefull'
 to zow to see það and to entir in-to þat haly place þat es
 a sette of godd'. And if ze be nozte clene, it es nozte leefull'
 24 to zow.' 'Jis, sir, sothely,' quop Alexander, 'we ere clene.'
 Það raise þe alde mañ vp of þe bedd' þat he lay in, and
 said' vn-to það: 'Puttez offe *zour* rynges,' quop he, 'and *zoure*
 clathes, & *zour* schone, and folowes me.' And pay dyd'¹ so.
 28 And það Alexander tuk wit *hym* tholomeus and Antiochus,
 & folowid' þe alde mañ, and went thurgh þe wodd' þat
 was abouñ oñ þe Mountayne closed' with mannes handez.
 Þe * treesse of þat wodd' ware an hundreth .c. fote lange &
 32 hye, and pay ware lyke lorers or Olyue treesse; And out
 of það *pare* rañ rykyles & fynne bawme. And as pay went
 thurgh þat wodd' pay saw a tree wondere hye, in þe whilke
pare satt a mekiñ fewle. Þat tree hadd' noþer *pare*-oñ lefes ne
 36 fruyte. Þe fewle þat satt *pare*-oñ hadd' oñ his hedd a creste
 lyk tiñ a pacokke, & his beeke also crested. Abowte his nekke,
 he hadd' fethirs lyke golde. Þe hynder of *hym* was lyk *purpure*;

metal and
stones.

He goes
into the
palace.
He finds an
aged man
there of
Bishop-like
appear-
ance.
He kneels
and salutes
him.

The aged
man speaks
and tells
him he
shall see
and hear
what never
earthly
man did
before. He
shall have
his desire
and know
the future.
He can only
see the holy
trees of the
sun and the
moon if
clean of
fleshy
deeds.
He must
put off
every-
thing to see
them.

Alexander,
Ptolemy,
and Anti-
ochus fol-
low the

* Leaf 39
bk.

old man
through the
wood on the
mountain,
through
wondrous
trees that
shed in-
cense and
balm.

¹ The scribe first wrote *de* and then changed the *e* into a *y*, making it into *dyd*.

They see the Phoenix. They come to the holy trees of the sun and the moon. The old man tells him to look up and think and the Spirit of the Trees shall answer his thought. These trees were high. The leaves of the sun tree golden red, of the moon tree shining white. Alexander would sacrifice to these trees but may not. The sun tree speaks in Indian or Greek, the moon tree begins in Greek and ends in the language of India. He gets his answer. He shall win the world but never see home again.

* Leaf 40.

and þe taylor was ownnded ouerthwert, wit a colour reede as rose & wit blewe. And his fethers ware riȝte faire schynand. When Alexander saw þis fewle he was gretely meruailled of þe faired of hym; þan saide þe Alde man: 'Alexander,' quop he, 'þis ilke fewle þat þou here seese es a fenix.' And þan þe pay went forþer thurgh þe forsaid wodd, And come to these haly treez of þe soñ & þe mone þat growed in myddez of þe wodde. And þan þe alde man saide till Alexander: 'Luke vp,' quop he, 'to ȝone haly treez, and thynke in thi hert what preuatee so þe liste, and þou saist hafe a trewe ansuere. Bot luke þat þou speke na worde in opyn. And þere-by saist þou witt þat it es a gude spiritt, þat knawes thi thoghte.' Thir twa treez were wonder hye. And þe tree of þe Soñ had leues lyke fyne golde, reed & faire schynande. And þe tree of þe mone had leses whitt als syluer & faire schynande. And þan walde Alexander hafe Offrede Sacrafyce to þir treez. Bot þe alde man walde noȝte suffre hym, bot said: 'It es noȝte leuefull,' quop he, 'in þis haly place, nowþer to offre encense, ne to slaa na bestez, Bot to knele douñ to þe boles of þir treez & kysse þan & pray þe soñ & þe mone to giffe trewe ansuers.' And þan Alexander spirred þe alde man, in what langage þe treez sulde giffe þaire answers. And þe alde man ansuerd & said: 'The tree of þe Son,' quop he, 'answers owþer aȝt in þe langage of Inde or eȝts of grewe. And þe tree of þe Mone begynnez wit þe langage of grewe & endeȝ wit þe langage of Inde.' And as þe pay stode þus spekande, Sudaynly þere come a bryghte beme fra þe weste þat schane ouer aȝt þe wodde. And þan Alexander kneled douñ, and kyssede þe treez an thought þus in his hert: 'Saist I conquere aȝt þe werlde, and efterwardeȝ wit þe victorie wende hame to Macedoyne till my moder Olympias, and my sisters? And * þan þe tree of þe soñ ansuerd softly in þe langage of Inde, And said þir verseȝ:

'Tú dominātorum orbis dominus simul et pater extas,
Set patrum rignum¹ per tempora nulla videbis ;'

þat es at say, 'þou ert bathe lorde & fader of aȝte þe werlde, Bot þe Rewme of thy Fadrys saist þou neuer see wit thyñ eghne.' þan þe bygan Alexander to thynke how lange he sulde lyffe,

¹ Sic in MS.

and whate dedd' he sulde dye. And þe tree of þe Mone shall he
ansuerd' by þir twa verseȝ: live and his
friend shall
poison him.

'Anno completo viues & mensibus octo,

4 De quo confidis tibi mortis pocula dabit.'

þat es at saye, 'A twluemonth & aughte monethes sall þou lyffe.
And þaṅ he þat þou traisteȝ oṅ, sall giffe þee a drynke of dedd'.
þaṅ bi-gaṅ Alexander to thynke in his hert oṅ þis wyse,

8 'Tell me nòw, hály trèe,
Wha he ès þat sall sláa mèe.'

And þaṅ þe tree of þe soṅ ansuerd' by þir twa verseȝ:

'Si tibi pandatur vir qui tua facta resoluet,

12 Illum confrynges & sic mea carmina fallent.'

þat es at say: 'And I schew the þe manes name, þat sall vndo
thi dedis, þou wilt slaa hym, and so sall my prophycye fayle.'
And þaṅ þe forsaide ald maṅ sayd' tiff Alexander: 'Disese
16 na mare þir trees,' quop he, 'wit thyne askynges. Bot tourne
we agayne, as we come hedir.' And þaṅ Alexander & his twa
prynceȝ wit hym tourned' agayne wit þe alde maṅ. And ay as
he went, he weped' bitterly, bi-cause of his schorte tyme; and
20 his prynceȝ also weped' riȝte sare. Bot he commanded' þaṅ þat
þay schulde noȝte tesse to na maṅ of his Oste þat that þay hadd'
herde & sene. And when þay ware comen to þe forsaide Palace
þe alde [man] said' vn-tiff Alexander: 'Torne bakke agayne,'
24 quoth he, 'for it es noȝte leefull to na maṅ to passe forthire.
If þe liste wende toward' þe weste, þou sall noȝte traueffe full
lange are þou come to þe place, whare þe liste to bee.' And
when þe alde maṅ had said' þir wordeȝ, he went in-to þe palace
28 and Alexander and his twa prynceȝ went douṅ by þe forsaide
greeȝ & come to þe Oste.

¹ Apon þe morne Alexander & his Oste removed' þeine & went
agayneward' fyftene days, And come agayne to þe forsaide
32 playne & þare þay lused' þaṅ. And þare at þe entree of þa
twa forsaide ways, Alexander gart rayse vp twa pelers of Marble,
and by-twixe þaṅ he haude a table of golde, on þe whilke was
wretyn in þe langage of grewe, hebrew, of latyne, and of Inde,
36 one this wyse: 'I, Alexander, Phillipṅ soṅ of Macedoyne, Alexander
journeys
fifteen
days and
then raises
up two
marble
pillars,
between
them a
table of

¹ Four lines with red capital A.

gold with letters in Greek,
 * Leaf 40 bk.
 Hebrew, Latin, and Indian, telling of his great deeds and guiding after-comers. Thence they go westwards towards Macedonia and come to the country of Prasiac. The men of the country bring him presents. There is in that country a city of precious stones ruled over by a widow queen and her sons. Alexander writes to Queen Candace sending presents, asking her to come that they may offer sacrifice together. Queen Candace writes to Alexander on his conquests, but proclaims that they may not

sett thir pelers here, after pe dedd of Darius kyng of Perse and of Porus kyng of Inde. What mañ so wilt passe forper late hym * tourne one pe lefte hand. For wha so tourne; one pe rihte hande he sañ fynde many obstace; & greuance; pat 4
 sañ peraenture lett his agayne-commynge.'

¹ Fra peine pay remowed thurgh pat playne and lefte pase straye wayes, takand pe way westward pe gayneste towarde Macedoyne. And at pe laste pay come till a cuntree pat highte 8
 Prasiac, And pare pay lused pañ. And wheñ meñ of pat cuntree herd of pe commynge of Alexander, wit grete wirchipe pay broghte hym grete presante; of swilk thynges; as pay hadd 12
 in paire lande, pat es at say, skynnes of fischez lyke vn-to pe skynnes of pardes, or of lyouns also, and lawmpray skynnes of sex cubites lange. In pat cuntree was a noble citee aft of precyous stanes made wit-owtten tyme or sande, sett apouñ an hill. Of pe whilke citee, a wirchippull lady and a faire hadd 16
 pe lordechipe. Pis lady was wedowe and scho hadd three sones. The firste of pañ highte Candeolus, pe secand Marciapius, And pe thirde hight Carator. To pis lady Alexander sent a lettre of pis tenour :

² 'Alexander pe soñ of godd Amoñ & of pe quene Olympias, kyng of kynges & lorde of lordes vn-to quene Candace of Meroñ ioy & gretynge. We sende 3ow ane ymage of godd Amoñ aft of fyne golde; And parefore come; till vs pat we may wende 24
 togeder to pe Mountayne for to make sacrafyce pare to godd Amon.' Wheñ pe Qwene Candace hadd redd pis lettre, Scho sent hir embassatours till kyng Alexander wit grete presante; and with a lettre of this tenour :

³ 'Candace, quene of Meroñ, vn-till Alexander, kyng of kynges, ioy. Wele we knawe pat 3e hafe by reuelacioñ of godd Amoñ pat 3e schulde conquere Perse, Inde and Egipte, and subiecte vn-to 3ow aft oper nacions. And aft pat 3e hafe 32
 done, noyte allanly was graunted bot also of aft oper goddes. Tiff vs pat hase faire saules & bryghte it nede; noghte to make sacrafyce to godd Amoñ in pe Mountaynes. Neuer-pe-lesse bicause we wilt noyte offende 3owere maiestatee, we sende till 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital *A* and

a beside.

³ Four lines with red capital *C* and *c* in the margin.

Amoñ 3oure godd' a Coroñ of golde and precyouse stanes, And ten chynes¹ of golde sett full of precious stanes. And vn-to 3ow we sende a hundrethe Besauntez of golde; And twa 4 hundreth papeiayes closed in cagez^{*} of golde, c childer of Ethipes, cc apes, cccc Olyphantis, xxxiiiⁱⁱ vnycornes, iij panter skynnez, of pardez & lyounes cccc, and we beseke 3owre hie maieste pat 3e wilt notyfy vn-till vs bi 3our wirchipfull lettres, 8 wheder 3e haue conquered alle þe werlde and made it subiecte vn-to 3ow or noyte.' Amangez her embassatours pat scho sent till Alexander þare was a wonder crafty & a suteff payntoure. And hym scho charged pat he schulde besely by-halde Alexander 12 & purtray his figure in a parchemyñ skynñ and brynge it to hir. And so he did. Alexander ressayued þe forsaid gyftes reuerently and sent hir noble gyftes agayne wit hir embassatours. And when þay come hame þe payntour take hir þe fegure of Alexander 16 purtrayed as I saide be-fore. And when þe quene saw it, Scho was rihte gladde, for scho desyred gretly for to see his figure.

² After pis ane of þe quene sonnes pat hight Candeolus went furthe of þe Citee wit his wyfe and a fewe of his menzee for to 20 take þe sporte. And onane þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, kuawying þe fairehed of Candeolus wyfe, come appoñ þam with a grete multitude of meñ, and slew many of Candeolus menzee and reftte hym his wyfe & went his way. And þam Candeolus and 24 his meñ pat ware lefte on lyfe went till Alexander Oste for to be-seke hym of helpe agaynes þe kyng of Bebrikes. And þe waches of þe oste take Candeolus & broghte hym bi-fore Tholomeus, pat was þe secund person after Alexander. And 28 Tholomeus spirred hym what he was, & what he did þare. 'I am,' quof he, 'quene Candace soñ and pis day als I went wit my wyfe & a preuee menzee for to take þe sporte, þe kyng of þe Bebrikes come apoñ vs wit a grete multitude of meñ and 32 hase slayne many of my menzee & reftte me my wyfe. And þare-fore I am comeñ heder for to beseke my lord, þe Emperour, of helpe & socoure.' When Tholomeus had herd pis onane he garte take kepe of Candeolus & went till Alexander tentis 36 and wakkned Alexander & talde hym & talde ilk a dele þat Candeolus had talde hym. And when Alexander hadd herde

sacrifice to Amon. Nevertheless.

* Leaf 41. she sends him presents—a crown of gold, a hundred bezants, slave-children, and various strange beasts. These gifts she sends by a painter who is to portray Alexander on a parchment skin. And so it was done.

Candeolus goes out of the city with his wife and a few for sport. A hostile king knowing the wife's beauty comes and reaves her away. Candeolus comes for help and is brought to Ptolemy. He proclaims who he is and his errand.

Ptolemy sends to Alexander and wakens him.

¹ *Chenes* first written; but when the scribe had written *e* he wrote *y* over it and joined it to the next letter.

² Four lines with red capital A.

Alexander bids Pto-
* Leaf 41
bk.
lemyputon
a crown as
though he
were Alex-
ander and
let him
send for
Antiochus,
and Alex-
ander will
come as
Antiochus
and ask
counsel of
Alexander
as though
he were
Antiochus.
Ptolemy
does as
Alexander
bids him.
Alexander
then coun-
sels that
the king
should be
command-
ed to de-
liver up
Candeolus'
wife that
night
or other-
wise de-
stroy his
city.
Candeolus
thanks
Alexander
as though
he were
Antiochus.
Alexander
does as he
counsels
and with a
great force
calls on
the king
to deliver
back Can-
deolus' wife
or else they
will burn

his tale he badd' hym gange agayne till his tent and do a corouñ on his hede and putt apouñ hyñ þe kynges clothyng, * and sett hym in the kynges trone & say vn-to Candeolus þat he was kyng Alexander. 'And bidd an of thi meñ,' 4 quop he, 'feche vn-to þe Antyochus, And late hym bryng me to þe insteed' of Antyochus, and when I come bi-for thee telle me bi-fore Candeolus¹ all þat he talde the. And aske me consell, als I ware Antyochus, what es beste to do in þat mater.' 8 Tholomeus went and didd' all als Alexander badd' hym. And he asched' Alexander in stedd' of Antyochus be-fore Candeolus what was beste to do. And Alexander ansuerd' & sayde on herand' Candeolus: 'Wirchipfull Emperour,' quop he, 'if it be 12 plesyng to 3our maiestee I will go wit Candeolus þis same nyghte to þe kyng of þe Bebrikes, and comande hym one 3our byhalue þat he 3elde Candeolus his wyfe agayne. And if he will nozte do soo, I saff late hym witt þat 3e saff sende a grete 16 powere to his Citee & bryne it vp stikke & stourre.' When Candeolus hadd' herde hym say þus, he knelyd' vn-till hym & said: 'A a, wirchipfull Antyochus,' quop he, 'wele walde it seme þe for to be a kyng for þe hye witt and þe manhede þat es 20 in the.' Than kyng Alexander tuke wit hym a grete powere and went apouñ þe same nyghte wit Candeolus vn-to þe Citee, whare þe kyng of þe Bebrikes lay. And whan þay come to þe citee, þe waytes cryed' apouñ þam, and askede what þay ware. 24 And Alexander ansuerd' & sayd: 'Candeolus,' quop he, 'es here wit ane Oste of meñ, and þe cause of his commyng es to be restorede agayne of his wyfe þe whilke 3our kyng raueste away fro hyñ þis same day. And my lord' kyng Alexander com- 28 mande3 3ow þat 3e delyuer hir anone, or sewrely we saff brynne this citee & 3our selfe are we passe hethyñ.' And when þe meñ of þe citee herde this, þay ware ferde ynoghe² and onane went to þe kynges palace & brakke vp þe 3ates, & tuke Candeolus 32 wyfe & delyuerd' hir till hir lorde. Þan Candeolus kneled' douñ till Alexander & saide vn-till hym: 'A a, my dere frende,' quop he, 'wirchipfull Antyochus, Blyssed mot þou be for þis grete gudnes þat þou hase schewed' mee. And I beseke the nowe þat 36

¹ The scribe has written *Antyochus* instead of *Candeolus*, then scratched it out, and written *Candeolus* again.

² The scribe has first written *yngh* and inserted the *o* above.

pou will vouche-saffe for to wende with me vn-to my moder quene Candace, pat scho may rewarde þe for pis pat pou hase done for me.' And when Alexander herde this he was ri3te gladde. For he had gretely desyrede for to see quene Candace & hir citee also. And þan he sayd: 'Goo we,' quop he, 'to þe emperour and asche hym leue.' And þay did' soo; and when he had leue, he went wit Candeolus. And as þay went to-gedir þay come till¹ heghe mountaynes pat reched vp to þe clowdes and apou þam þare growed trees of a wonderfull heghte lyke * vn-to² cedres pat bare appiffs of Inde ri3te grete, Of þe whilk Alexander wonderde hym gretly. Þay saw also þare vynes growe wit wondere grete bobbis of grapes; for a mañ myzte vnnethe3 bere añ of þam. Þare ware also trees pat bare nuttez als grete als gourde3. And þare ware also many apes. Fra þeine þay went & come to þe citee of quene Candace.

16 And when Candace herd tell pat hir soñ Candeolus and his wyfe ware comande and ware safe & sounde, And at a messangere of kyng Alexander come wit þam, scho was wonder gladde; and onane scho arayed hir ryally as a quene suld be, and sett apou hir hedde a crouñ full ryche all of golde sett full of precyouse stanes, and went furthe wit hir lordes to þe 3ates of hir palace, for to mete hir soñ Candeolus and Alexander messenger. This quene was a wondere faire lady & a semely; And when Alexander saw hir, hym thoghte als he hade sene his moder Olympias. Hir palace was wonder ryalle & precyouse and all þe ruffe þare-of schane wit golde & precyouse stanes. Than quene Candace tuke Alexander bi þe hande, And ledd hym vp till hir chambir, whare þare ware beddes arayed wit þe fyneste clathes of golde pat myghte be getyñ; And pat chambir was of golde & precyous stanes, þe whilke are called Onychyns & þe burde3 & þe bynkes of euour & Smaragde3 & Amatistes. Þe Pelers of þe Palace ware all of Marble, And þar ware grauē in þam cartes of werre, pat semed to mannes sighte as þay had bene rynnand; And Olyphauntes tredand meñ vnder þaire fete. Vndernethe pat Palace rane a water wonder swete, & clere as any cristaffe.

the city. The citizens revolt and return Candeolus' wife. Candeolus thanks Alexander again as Antiochus, and invites him to come to his mother's city. At this Alexander * Leaf 42. ander is glad, for he had greatly desired to see Queen Candace and her city. They ask leave of the Emperor as it were. He goes with Candeolus. They come to mountains that reach up to the sky, with wondrous tall trees and vines with great bunches of grapes and nut-like gourds, and many apes were there. They come to Candace, who comes arrayed to meet them as a queen. She is of great beauty; and her palace is rich. She takes him to her privy chamber with its wonderful works of art.

¹ The scribe first wrote 'an heghe', but then scratched out the *an*.

² On leaf 41 we have the words *lyke to*

þe cedres. On leaf 42 it continues *lyke vn-to cedres*.

pat day Alexander ete wit quene Candace & hir childire.

The next day she goes alone with Alexander to her with-drawing room, which lies beyond her bedroom. Her with-drawing room is moved on wheels by elephants. Alexander utters his wonder.

* Leaf 42 bk.

Queen Candace addresses him by name. Alexander's fear.

She shows him his portrait. Alexander fears again.

She rails at him that he, the conqueror of the world, is fallen into a woman's hands.

Alexander is angered. She rails at him further.

¹ Apoñ þe morne quene Candace tuk Alexander by þe right hande & ledd^h hym in-tiff hir bedd^h-chambir, and nane wit þa^m, Bot þay twa allañ. Þis chambir was couerde a^ñ ouer wit-in 4 wit golde & precious stanes. And it schane wit-in, as it had bene þe sonne. And oute of þis chambir scho ledd^h hym in-tiff a wit-drawyng chambir made of cypresse. Þis chambir was sett apoñ foure wheles by crafte of clergy; And twenty xx^{ti} Oly- 8 phauntis drewe it whedir as scho wolde hafe it. And wheñ Alexander & þe quene ware entrede in-to þat chambir, onane it stirredd^h & by-gan for to remowe. And þa^m Alexander was astonayde & meruaylled^h hym gretly & said vn-to þe 12 quene: 'For sothe,' quop he, '& þir meruailis ware in oure cuntree þay ware rizte commendable & meki^ñ worthy* to be praysede.' The quene answerde: 'Þou saise sothe, Alexander,' quop scho, 'þay ware mare commendable amangeþ þe Grekeþ, 16 þa^m amangeþ vs.' And also sone als Alexander herde hys name be neuenede, he was gretly trubblede, and his vesage bi-gañ to waxe pale, and his chere to change. And than the quene said este vn-to hym: 'Alexander,' quop she, 'for to schewe 20 þe mare verrayly þat þou ert Alexander, com^ñ with me.' And þa^m scho tuk hym by þe hande & leedde hym in-tiff anoþer chambir, and schewed^h hym þare his awenñ Fyfigure purtrayed in a parchemyñ skyne. And wheñ Alexander saw þat, he wex 24 pale & wanne & biganne to tremblee. And þa^m þe quene said vn-tiff hym: 'Alexander,' quop scho, 'where-fore ert þou ferde, & why changeþ þou chere. Thou þat hase distroyed^h a^ñ þe werlde; conquerour of Perse, of Inde, of Mede, and many oþer 28 rewmes & landeþ, Now arte þou witowtten^ñ scheddyngge of blode fallen in þe dawngere & in þe handeþ of quene Candace vnausyly. And þare-by may þou wele knawe þat a manes hert sulde on na wyse be enhanced in pride. For if a^ñ it bee þat ofte tymmes 32 grete prosperitee fall to mañ, Sodaynly falleþ aduersitee tiff hym wheñ he leste wenes.' Wheñ Alexander herde þis he bigañ to grayste wit þe teethe and to torne his hede hedir & thedir, And quene Candace saide vn-tiff hym: 'Whare to 36 angers þou þe,' quop scho, '& trubleþ thi selfe? What may now thi grete Imperia^ñ glory, thi witt & thi mighte serue

¹ Four lines with red capital A.

the offe?' Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Forsothe', quop Alexander, 'resonably I am angry at my selfe bi-cause I hafe na swerde here.' Quop þe quene: 'I suppose þou hadd a swerde, nowe, what walde do þare-wit?' 'Sothely,' quop he, 'bi-cause I hafe wilfully betrayed' my-selfe vn-to þe. First I solde sla þe and þaṅ, I dowte it nozt, I sulde be slayne for þe.' 'Now for sothe,' quop scho, 'þis was wisely & maṅfully sayde. Neuer-þe-less be nathynge heuy. For as þou delyuerde my soṅ wyfe Candeolus oute of þe daungere of þe kyng of Bebrikes Swaa saṅ I delyuer the oute of þe daungere of thyṅ enemys þat þou hase here. For I say þe in certayne, and it ware knaweṅ þat þou ware here vn-to my menzee, onane þay walde slaa þe by-cause þou slewe Porus þe kyng of Inde. For my soṅ wyfe Carator was his doughter.' And whenṅ scho had said þis, Scho tuk Alexander bi þe hande & ledd' hym forthe in-till hir forchambire and said' vntill hir sones: 'My dere sonnes,' quop scho, 'I pray zow late vs make þis knyghte of Alexander gude chere, and schew hym aṅ þe humanytee þat we caṅ. For Alexander has schewed' vs grete frendchipe and grete gudnesse.' And þaṅ hir zongeste ansuerde & said: 'Moder,' * quop he, 'sothe it es þat he es a messangere of Alexanders, & a knyghte of his, and þat he delyuerde my proper wyfe of þe hande, of þe kyng of þe Bebrikes and broghte hym & hir hame vn-till vs bathe safe & sownde. Neuer-þe-lesse my wyfe constreynez me for to do Antyochus to dede bi-cause of þe dede of hir Fadir Porus, whilke Alexander slewe, So þat Alexander may hafe sorow for his knyghte. Quop quene Candace þaṅ: 'Lefe soṅ, what wirchip' may we get þare-offe if we slaa this knyghte þus traytourusly.' And þaṅ Candeolus sayde wit a grete Ire, 'þis knyghte,' quop he, 'saued me & my wyfe & broghte vs hedir safe & sonde; And als saffe saṅ I hafe hym, agayne till his lorde, or I saṅ be dede þarefore.' And Carator ansuerde & saide: 'Proper,' quop he, 'what says þou? will þou þat aythere of vs here slaa oper?' 'In gud faythe proper,' quop he, 'it es nozte my will, ne my liste. Neuer-þe-lesse if it be thi liste, I am redy, rather þaṅ þis knyghte be dedde.' And whenṅ þe quene saw þat hir sonnes walde ayther of þaṅ slaa oper, scho was wonder sary, and tuk Alexander oṅ syde, and saide vn-till hym preualy: 'A, a, kyng Alexander,'

Alexander is angry at himself. Had he but a sword he would slay her and die for it. She commends him, therefore she bids him not fear, for since he helped her son she will deliver him from another son who is Porus' son-in-law. She introduces Alexander as one of his own knights, Antiochus.

* Leaf 43
Her younger son would slay him for his wife's sake, to grieve Alexander.

Candeolus offers to defend Alexander with his own life.

Candace appeals to Alexander to save her sons from

combat by his wit, so that either slay not other.

Alexander promises to do so.

Alexander offers to betray Alexander to Carator.

Carator assents.

Queen Candace parts from Alexander with many gifts.

* Leaf 43 bk.

Alexander and Candeolus come to a cave. Alexander, sacrificing, goes in. He sees a great god sitting with eyes like stars. The god greets him.

quoþ scho, 'whi will þou noȝte schewe thi witt, and helpe thurgh thi wisdom þat my sonnes slaa noȝt ayther of þam oþer?' And Alexander answerde and said: 'Late me goo speke wit þam,' quoþ he. And scho lete hym goo. And 4 he went to þam and sayde vn-to Carator: 'For sothe, Carator,' quoþ he, 'I late þe wite þat if þou slaa me, þou saff wyne bot lyttiff wirchipe þareoffe. For I say þe, kyng Alexander hase many worthyer knyghtis wit hym þam I am; And þarefore he 8 will hafe littiff sorowe for my dede. Trowes þou þat and Alexander hadd' lufed me wele þat he walde hafe sent me hyder to be killed amangeȝ zowe. Bot if þou witt þat I beken þe Alexander þe slaere of þi wyfe fader & bryng hym bi-for the, 12 Swere me þat what so I asche þe, þou saff graunte mee it, And I sure þe bi þe faythe of my body, I saff bryng Alexander in-to þis palace be-fore þe.' And when Carator herde this, he was rijte glade, and trowed þat that Alexander said. And so ware 16 þe twa breþer pesede, And highte Alexander þat his askynge sulde be fulfilled als ferforthe als þaire powere reched, if so ware þat he helde couenant. Þam quene Candace leedd Alexander on syde & sayd vn-till hym in þreuatee: 'Wele ware me,' quoþ scho, 20 'myghte I ilke day hafe þe present be-fore myn eghne as I hafe myn awennd childere. For thurgh the sulde I ouercome all myn Enemys.' And þam [scho] gaffe Alexander a coronnd of golde sett full of precyous dyamandez, and a mantiff Imperiaff 24 of a clathe of golde * wit sternes wofen þare-in, and sett full of precyouse stanes. And þam scho kyssed hym & oþer preuee thynges didd' till hym, And badde hym goo in hir blyssynge.

¹ Than kyng Alexander and Candeolus went furthe all that 28 daye, And come till a grete spelunc, and þare þay herberde þam. And Candeolus saide till Alexander: 'In this spelunc,' quoþ hee, 'þat you here seeȝ all goddeȝ ere wount for to ete and halde þaire consaiff.' And þam onane Alexander made sacra- 32 fyceȝ till his goddeȝ and enterde in-to þe caue by hym ane. And þare he sawe a myrke clowde, & in þat myrknesse, he sawe as it ware bryghte sternes, and amangeȝ þase sternes he saw a grete godd' sitt, And his eghne lyke twa lanternes. And when 36 Alexander saw hym he was so fered þat he was as it hadd' bene

¹ Red capital *T* in four lines space and small *t* in margin.

in a transynge. And þaⁿ þe godd^d said vn-to hym: 'Haile, Alexander,' quop he. And Alexander ansuerde & said: 'Lorde,' quop he, 'what art pou?' 'I am,' quop he, 'Sensoⁿchosis
 4 þat gouerneþ þe kyngdom of þe werlde and þat hase made meⁿ sugettes vn-to the. And pou hase bigged þiselfe many ryalle citeez. Bot temple walde pou nane make in þe wirchippe of me.' And Alexander ansuerd & said: 'Lorde,' quop he, '& þou
 8 wiff graunt me þat I saff wif prosperitee come in-to Macedoyne I saff ordeyne the a temple þare saff nozte be swilke anoper in all þe werlde.' And he ansuerd agayne & saide: 'For sothe,' quop hee, 'Macedoyne saff þou neuer see wif thyⁿ
 12 eghne. Neuer-þe-lesse walke Innermare & luke what þou seez.' Alexander þaⁿ went forthirmare & saw anoper myrke clowde and saw a godd^dsitt in a trone lyke a kynge, and Alexander said vn-till hym: 'Lorde,' quop he, 'what art þou?' 'I am,' quop he,
 16 'þe begynnyng of all goddez and Serapis es my name. I sawe the in þe lande of liby & nowe I see þe here.' 'Serapis,' quop Alexander, 'I beseke þe telle me wha it es þat saff sla me.' Quod Serapis: 'I talde þe bi-fore, þat and þe cause
 20 of a manes dede ware knawen vn-till hym, he solde dy for sorowe. Pou hase bygged a glorious citee agaynes þe whilke many emperours saff fighte. Þare-in saff thi graue be made and þare-in saff þou be beried.' And þaⁿ Alexander come oute
 24 of þe caue, and tuke his leue at Candeolus and went till his Oste.

¹ One þe morne he removed his Oste And come till a valay þat was full of grete ²serpentes þe whilk hade in þaire heuedis Grete smaragdez. Thir serpentez * lyffede all wif gyngere and
 28 pepir þat growede in þe valaye. And ilke a zere þay feghte togedir and many of þaⁿ slaez oper. Off þe forsaid Smaragdes tuk Alexander su^m wif hym of þe grettete þat he couthe gett.

32 ³Fra þeine þay removed & come in-till a place in þe whilke þare ware besteþ þat hade one ilke a fote twa clees as swyne hase, and pase clees ware three fote brade wif þe whilke þay smate Alexander knyghtes. Þay had also heuedes lyke swyne
 36 & tayles lyke lyouns. Þare ware also amangeþ þaⁿ grypes þe

Sensochosis reproves Alexander's neglect of him. Alexander swears to build him a temple in Macedonia. The god tells him he shall never see it again.

Alexander goes further into the cave and sees a god enthroned in the dark, Serapis, who foretells him where he shall be buried.

On the morrow he removes

* Leaf 44. his army and comes to a valley of strange serpents. They see other strange beasts and griffons who attack Alexander's knights. They could

¹ Three lines with red capital O and small o in the margin.

² MS. 'serpe' crossed out and 'serpentes'

written.

³ Three lines with red capital F and small f in the margin beside.

carry off a knight and his horse.

Alexander's knights fight manfully against them.

They come to a great river and make boats to cross over. The people of the country send Alexander gifts.

They find women in that river who slay men.

Two of them they capture. They come to Gog and * Leaf 44 bk.

Magog, who are the ten tribes of Israel led out of their own land by a Persian king. They ask Alexander leave to come forth.

whilke smate knyghtes in þe vesageꝛ rechte felly. Þay ware so strange þat ane of þaṁ wolde bere away an armed knyghte & his horse also. Þaṁ kyng Alexander rade hedir & þedir amangeꝛ his meṁ and comforthed þaṁ and badd þaṁ fehte 4 manly agaynes þaṁ wit speres and wit arowes. And so þay did. Bot þare was slayne of Alexander knyghtes ceviii.

¹ And fra þeine þay removed and come tiff a grete ryuer þe whilke was twenty furlange on brede fra þe ta banke to 8 þe toþer. And on þase bankes þare growed redis wonder grete and hye. Of þase redes garte Alexander mak bates & anynte þaṁ wit terre & talgh of besteꝛ, And badd his knyghtis row ouer þe water in þase bates. And þay did soo. And when þe 12 [pople]² of þe cunn-tree herde teiff of þe commynge of Alexander & his Oste, þay sent hym gyftes of swylk thynges als was in þaire cuntree, þat es at say Grete spoungeꝛ bathe whitte & purple & schelles of þe see so grete þat an of þaṁ walde 16 halde twa pekkes or three. Þay sent hym also wormes þat þay drew owte of þat ryuer grettere þaṁ a manes thee, and þay ware swetter of taste þaṁ any fysche. Þay gaffe hym Cukstoles aff rede þat ware of a wonderfull gretnesse. In þat ryuer ware 20 womans þat ware wonder faire & þay hade oṁ þaṁ mekiiff here þat rechedd douṁ to thaire fete. Þir women, when þay saw any straunge meṁ swymme in þat riuer, owþer þay drowned þaṁ in þe water, or eiff þay walde lede þaṁ to þe redeꝛ þat 24 growed oṁ þe water bankes and garre þaṁ lye by þaṁ ay tiff any lyfe was in þaṁ. Þe Macedoynes persued þaṁ & tuke twa of þaṁ and broghte þaṁ tiff Alexander,* and þay ware als white as any snawe, and þay ware ten fote lange and þaire 28 teethe ware lyke dogge teethe.

³ Efter this Alexander went and closed in a maner of folkes þat are called Gog & Magog, with-in þe hilleꝛ of Caspy. Þis folkeꝛ were of þe ten kyndeꝛ of Israel, and þay ware leedd owte 32 of þaire awenṁ land bi a kyng of Perse be-cause of þaire synneꝛ and halden in thralledom. And þay asched Alexander leue for to wende furth of þat cuntree. And Alexander gert spirre þe cause of þaire thraldom, and he was encensed þat be-cause þay 36

¹ Three lines with red capital A and small a in margin beside.

² MS. reads, And when þe of þe cunn-tree

(?þe[i] of, &c.).

³ Three lines with red capital E and small e in the margin beside.

hadd' forsaken' paire goddez lawe, þat es at say, godd' of Isrl',
 and wircipede' Calues & oper Mawmettes, þare-fore þay ware
 ledd' oute of paire awenn' lande & haldeñ in thralldom̄, and þat
 4 prophetes had prophiced' be-fore þat þay sulde neuer come oute
 of thralldom̄ bi-fore agayne þe day of dome. And þañ Alexander
 ansuerde & said þat he sulde sperre þañ In̄ mare seurely. And
 þañ he garte close aff þe entreez wit stane & lyme & sand, Bot
 8 aff þat he garte make on þe day was fordone on̄ þe nyghte. And
 when̄ Alexander saw þat mannes laboure myghte nozte stande in
 stede, he bi-soghte godd' of Isrl' þat if it ware his liste þat þay
 habade þare, þat he walde close þañ in. And þe nexte nyghte
 12 affir ilk a cragge feste tiff oper, and so þare may nathynge
 passe in nor owte. And þare-by it semez þat it es nozte goddez
 will þat þay come oute. Neuer-þe-lesse abowte þe Ende of þe
 werlde þay sail breke oute and do mekiñ schathe & slaa many
 16 men̄.

¹ Fra þeine þay removed' & come to þe grete See Occeane. In
 þat See þay sawe ane Ile a littiff fra þe lande. And in þat Ile
 þay herde men̄ speke grewe. And þañ Alexander commanded'
 20 þat sum̄ of his knyghts sulde do off þaire clothes and swyme
 ouer to þe ile. And þay did' soo. And als sone als þay come
 in þe See þare come gret crabbes vp oute of þe water & pullede
 þañ downne to þe grounde & drowned' þañ.

² Thanne removed' þay fra thethyñ and went ay endlande
 þe See syde to-warde þe solstice of wynter trauellande xī days;
 and at þe laste þay come to a reede See, and þare þay lugede
 þañ. Þare was faste by a Mountayne wonder hye, One
 28 þe whilke Alexander went vp. And when̄ he was abowñ on̄
 þe heghte þare-offe, hym thoghte þat he was nerre þe Firmament
 þan þe erthe; þañ he ymaged' in his hert swilk a gynñ how
 he myghte make * gripes bere hym vp in-to þe ayere. And
 32 onane he come doune of þe Mountayne and garte come bi-fore
 hym̄ his Maistre wrightes and comandid' þañ þat þay sulde
 make hym a chayer and trelesse it wit barre3 of Ireñ one ilk
 a syde so þat he myzte sauely sitt þare-in. And þañ he gart
 36 brynge foure gripes and tye þañ faste wit Ireñ cheynes vn-to þe
 chayere, and in þe ouermare party of þe chayere he gart putt

But he
 learns that
 they had
 forsaken
 the True
 God for
 idols, and
 therefore
 they are
 banished
 and im-
 prisoned
 till Dooms-
 day.
 Alexander
 says he
 shall bar
 them in
 more
 surely.
 God an-
 swers his
 prayers,
 and rocks
 fall down
 and shut
 them in
 until
 Doomsday,
 when they
 shall come
 forth to do
 great harm.
 They come
 to the sea
 and an isle
 near the
 shore.
 They hear
 men speak
 Greek
 there.
 Alex-
 ander's
 messengers
 to the isle
 are killed
 by crabs.
 They travel
 along the
 * Leaf 45.
 seashore to
 the Red
 Sea.
 Alexander
 goes up a
 mountain.
 His master
 workers
 make him

¹ Four lines with red capital *F* and small *f* in the margin beside.

² Three lines with red capital *T* and small capital *T* in margin.

a chair
whereby
he is borne
by griffons
up into the
air.

He comes
down about
ten days'
march
from his
army.
Then he
lusteth to
know the
depths of
the sea.
The master
glaziers
make him
a glazen
cage with
iron bars
and it is
lowered
down
into the
sea, and
there he
beholds
many won-
ders and
strange
beasts until
he is drawn
up again
by his
knights.

They
march on
and have
to fight
* Leaf 45
bk.
strange
horned
beasts.
They come
to the wil-
derness of

mete for þe gripes. And þaȝ he wente and sett hym in þe chayere. And onane þe gripes bare hym vp in þe ayer so hye þat Alexander thoughte all þe erthe na mare þaȝ a flure þare meȝ thresscheȝ corne, and þe See lyke a dragonȝ abowte 4 þe erthe. Þaȝ sodaynly a specyall vertu of godd' vmbilapped þe gripes þat gart þaȝ discende doune to þe erthe in a felde : ten .x. day iournee fra þe Oste, and he hadd' na hurt ne na schathe in þe chayere. Bot wit grete disesse at þe laste he 8 come till his Oste.

¹ After þis Alexander ymageden in his hert þat he walde know þe preuates þat are in þe see. And onane he gart come bifore hym all þe Maister glaziers þat ware in þe Oste, And comandede 12 þaȝ to make hym a grete tounne of passandy clere glasse þat he myghte thurgh it clerey see all maner of thynges þat ware witowtten it. And whē it was made he gart trelesse it al abowte witowtten wit barres of yreȝ and feste þare-to lang cheynes of 16 yreȝ, and gart a certane of þe strangeste & maste tristy knyghtes þat langed vn-till hym halde þir cheynes. And þaȝ he went in-to þe tounne & gart pykke wele þe entree whare he went in, and þaȝ late it douȝ into þe See. And þare he sawe dyuerse 20 schappes of fisches of dyuerse colours ; and suȝ he sawe hafe þe schappe of dyuerse bestes here one þe lande, gangande on fete as bestes dose here & etande fruyte of treesse þat growes on þe See grunde. Þir bestes come till hym. Bot onane as pay 24 saw hym thorow þe glasse pay fledde fra hym. He sawe þare also many oper meruaylous thynges, þe whilke he walde tell na maȝ bi-cause meȝ walde noghte hafe trowed þaȝ if he had talde þaȝ, and at a certayne houre þase þat he hadd' assyngned 28 be-fore, his knyghtes drewe hym vp oute of þe See.

² Fra þeine pay Remowed' Folowande þe banks of þe Rede See, and lused þaȝ in a place, whare þare ware wyld Bestes that hade oȝ þaire heuedis hornes lyke vn-to * sawes, and pay 32 ware als scharpe als swerdeȝ. And with thire hornes pay slewe & hurte many knyghtis of Alexanders & cloue þaire cheldes in sonder. Neuer-þe-lesse Alexander knyghtis slew of þaȝ ccccli.

³ And fra þeine pay remowed and come in-till wilderness 36

¹ Four lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

small *f* in margin besides.

² Three lines with red capital *F* and

³ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

bitwex þe reed¹ See and Araby, whare grete multitude of Pepir growed²; And þare ware many grete nedders wit hornnes on þaire hedes lyke tuppe hornes, wit þe whilke þay smate Alexander⁴ ander knyghtis riȝt felly. Off þase nedderes slew þe Macedoynes a grete party.

pepper trees and horned adders.

¹ Þeine þay removed¹ and lugeð in a place whare many Rynosephales ware, þe whilke hade heuedes & manes lyke horsez. And þay hade grete bodys, and wonder grete teethe and lange, and oute of þaire mouthes þay schotte flawmez of fyre. And when þay saw þe Oste luge þare þay come & assaylled² þam. And Alexander rað hyder and thedir³ amangez þe oste and comforthed³ his knyghtes and bad þam feghte manly wit þase monstres. And so þay didd³. Neuer-þe-lesse þare ware a grete multitude of his knyghtis slayne of þase bestez. Bot of þe Rynocephales þare was slayne an hugge¹⁶ multitude.

They meet and have to fight Rhinoceri that spit forth fire.

They fight them fiercely.

² Þam þay removed² fra þeine and come in-till a champayne cuntree and lugeð þam þare, And lay þare a certane days, Bi-cause of his horse Buktyphalas þat feið seke þare; of þe²⁰ whilke sekenesse he dyed². And when Alexander saw hym dedd² he made grete dole for hym and weped² for hym riȝt sare. For he hadd² borne hym in many a Batefle, and broghte [hym] oute of many perells. And þare-fore when he was dede Alexander²⁴ gart doo aboute hym grete exequyes and gart make hym a full riche tounge & a hye and did²⁴ hym þare-in and made a grete citee þare, þe whilke in mynde of his horse he gart call Buktyphalas.

Alexander's steed Bucephalus dies. He makes a rich tomb and builds a city round him.

²⁸ ³ Fra þeine þay removed³ and come till a ryuere⁴ þat was called Cytan or Deciracy whare men of þe cuntree broghte hym v̄ Olyphantes and v̄ cartes of werre. And fra þeine þay removed³ & come till kynge Jerses palace. And in þat Palace³² þay fande beddez of clene golde many a thowsande. Þare ware also grete fewles white als doufes, þe whilke had knawing be-fore of a seke mañ wheder he schulde lyffe or dye. For if þay by-helde þe seke mañ in þe vesage, he schulde mende & ³⁶ fare wele. And if þay tourned³⁶ þam awaywarde witowtten

They come to the palace of Xerxes.

The birds that fore-tell the life or death of a man.

¹ Three lines.

² Three lines.

³ MS. has a small *f* written in margin, but no space for the large capital to be put.

⁴ The scribe first wrote *reuer*, then altered it to *ryver*, then scratched it all out and wrote *ryvere* after it.

* Leaf 46.

doute he schulde dye,* and if þay tourned hym þe bakke wit owttē dowe he sulde dye.

They come to Babylon and capture it.

¹ Fra þeine þay removed and come to þe grete Citee of Babiloyne and wanne it oo werre and slew þe kynge *pare-offe* ⁴ & þe Captayne also. And *pare* he duelled vn-till his lyffes end, and þat was Bot vij seuē Monethes. In þat mene tyme Alexander sent a *lettre* till Olympias his Moder and till his Mayster Arestotle, latand þaū witte of þe Batellis and þe dyssese ⁸ þat þay suffred bathe wynters and Somers in Inde and oper cuntree, and also of þe Batellis þat þay hadd wīt dyuerse Monstres. And þaū Arestotle wrate anoper *lettre* till Alexander agayne þe wilke was of this tenour :

Aristotle writes to Alexander again praising him greatly for his victories.

³ Un-till Alexandere þe grete kynge of kyngez Arestotle sende; ioy and seruyce. Whē I hade redde *3our* wyrchipuff *lettres* I was gretly astonayd. For wilke cause I desyre with all myū hert for to fynde lonyng þat I myghte zelde vn-to þe. ¹⁶ I take witnessse at oure godde; þat for þe passande hardenesse of þi hert & þe grete auentours þat þou hase put þe in, þou erte wele worthy for to be loued & praysede. For þou hase sene & assayed thyngez þat neuer maū or þis durste assaye. Whare-for ²⁰ thankynge & lonyng I zelde to þe makere of all þis wyde werlde þat swylke victoryes hase grantede vn-to þe. For þou hase ouercommēd all & nane hase ouercomeū þe. Full blyssede are all thy prynce; þat hase bene obeyande vnto þe, and helped þe ²⁴ in all thi disesse;.

Alexander has a wondrous throne made.

³ Afftir þis Alexander gart make in Babyloyne a wonder curious trone ⁴ of golde, *pare* was noȝte swilke anoper in þe werlde. For þe greke; broghte so mekiū golde oute of *perse* & ²⁸ oute of Inde, þat it ware wonder for to telle. Þis ilke toure was twlue cubyte; hye and by twelue grece; ⁵ meū ascended *pare-too*, and þase gree; ware all of golde. Þis trone was wonderfully wroghte and sett apoū twelue ymage; of golde, þe ³² whilke trone þe forsaid ymage; helde vp wīt þaire hende. And on þase twelue ymage; ware wretyū þe names of þe twelue prynce; of Macedoyne. Þe seet of þe trone was of a Smaragde,

The throne of Alexander with its images, its ruby, and its inscriptions.

¹ Three lines with big capital *F* followed by small capital.

² Four lines with red capital *U* and small *u* in the margin.

³ Four lines with red capital *A* and

small *a* in the margin beside.

⁴ *toure* scratched out and *trone* written in.

⁵ The first part of this word reads *gr + blot + ce;.*

& þe syde; þare off ware of Topazes & in ilkañ of þe gree; ware sett dyuerse maneres of precyouse stanes. In þe summyt of þis trone þare was sett a ruby þat schane on þe nyghte as it hade bene þe Mone. In þis trone also was þare sett oñ ilke a syde dyuerse ymage; on þe whilke ware wretyñ bathe in latyne & in grew* versez; þat contened' añ þe nammes of þe rewmes & cuntree; þat Alexandere had conquered' and ware sugetes vn-till hym.

* Leaf 46 bk.

8 ¹ After þis ⁴ Alexander gert make a corouñ of golde sett full of all maner of precyouse stanes, and gert wryte apoñ it a tytyle in grew & in latyñ: 'Ortus & occasus, Aquilo michi seruit & Auster.' Þat es at saye: 'Est & weste, Northe & southe dose seruyce vn-to me.' In the mene tyme whils Alexander was in babyloyne, a womañ was delyuer of a knaue childe þe whilke fra þe heuede to þe nauyñ hadd' schappe of mañ, & was borne dedd'. And fra þe nauyñ downward; it had lyknesse of dyuerse beste; and was qwykke. Þis Monstre was taken & broghte till Alexander; and als soñ als he saw it he meruaylled' gretly þare-off, and gart come bi-fore hym a philosopher þat couthe of wiche-crafte, & aschede hym what it sygnfyed'. And when þe philosopher saw it, he syghede, & saye wepand' sayde vn-to hym: 'Sothely wirchpfull emperour,' quop he, 'þe tyme commez nere that þou sañ passe oute of this werlde.' 'Telle me,' quop Alexander, 'whareby þou knawes þat.' And þe philosophre ansuerde & sayde: 'My lorde,' quop he, 'þe halfe of þis Monstre þat hase þe schappe of mañ & es dedd', betakens þat þou sañ passe out of þis werlde in haste. And þe toþer party þat hase þe lyknes of dyuerse beste; & es on lyfe, betakynge; þe kynges þat sañ come after þe. Bot þare sañ nane of þañ be lyke vn-to þe, na mare þañ a beste es lyke vn-till a mañ.' When Alexander herde þis he was wonder heuy, and sare wepand' he sayde on þis wyse: 'O Allmyghty Iubiter,' quop he, 'what mene; it þat my dayes sañ be so schortte? Me thynke þat it had bene semely þat I had leffed' langere for till haf endid thynges; þat are in my thoghte. Bot for als mekiñ als it es nozte plesande vn-to þe, I beseke the þat þou resayffe me when I sañ passe hethen als thyñ aweñ seruante.'

The crown of Alexander and the inscriptions thereon.

The strange child born in Babylon half alive and half dead, half man and half animal, and the meaning it has. The death of Alexander and the coming of his successor. In what they shall not be like him.

The sorrow of Alexander.

Antipator wishes for

¹ Three lines with red capital A and small a in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital I and small i in margin beside.

the death
of Alex-
ander, who
is warned
of him by
Olympias.

* Leaf 47.

He buys
poison and
gives it to
his son to
have it
given to
Alexander
by a pro-
tégé whom
he has
struck.

His protégé
gives
the king
a drop of
poison in
his cup
from his
thumb.
Alexander
cries
out with
pain, but
forbears
awhile
to leave
the feast.

Antipater, þe whilke of langetyme be-fore hadd' casten for þe dedde of Alexander; And wit many oper þat he hadd' confedred vn-till hym he conspyred' for to brynge it tyll ende, bot he myghte neuer come aboute þer-with. For Olympias, Alexander moder, wrate vn-till hym ofte-sythes and warned hym þat he scholde be warre wit Antipater & his childre, and here-fore was Antypater wonder sary. So apoñ a tyme he vmythoghte hym þat he myghte neuer come aboute wit his purpose for to slaa Alexander, bot if it ware thurgh enpuysonyng. *And so apoñ a daye he went till a Sotell leche, and boghte of hym a maner of drynke made of puysoñ that was so felle & so ranke þat þare myghte no vesselle halde it Bot a vessell made of Ireñ; and þare-in he putt it. And þañ he gaffe it his soñ Cassandre, and bad' hym bere it till his broþer Iobas and byd' hym, quop he, gyffe it to kyng Alexander in his drynke, when he seeþ his tyme. This ilk Iobas was a faire zong mañ & was duellyng with Alexander, and gretly by-luffede & cheriste of hym. Bot so it be-felle apoñ a tyme þat Alexander smate Iobas on þe heued wit a warderere for na trespasse. Whare-fore Iobas was gretly angred' and greued' at Alexander and consented'till his dede, and tuke þe puysoñ of his broþer þat was ordeyned' for Alexander dede þat luffed' hym so mekill.

¹ And apoñ a daye Alexander gart ordeyne a grete reuelle in Babyloyn and called þare too all his pryncez oñ ilke a syde. And as he satt at þe mete Iimage his pryncez he was wonder mery & gladde & iocund; and reheted' his lordez & prayed þañ þat þay schulde be mery. Þañ Iobas þat serued' þe kyng of his coupe tuke of þe puysoñ a poreyoñ, and putt it vnder þe nayle of his thowme, and broghte þe coppe to þe kyng full of wyne. And as he gaffe it to þe kyng, he lete þe puysoñ falle in þe wyne priualy. And als sone als þe kyng hadd' dronkeñ þe puysoñ, Sudaynly he gaffe a grete scryke, and lened' hym down towarde þe rihte syde. For hym thoghte reghte als a mañ hadd' smyteñ hym in-to þe lyuere wit a suerde. Neuer-pe-lesse he feyned' & forbare a while & suffred' a grete penance, and when he myzte na langere habyde, he rase vp fra þe burde and saide till his lordez & his knyghtes: 'Lordyngis,' quop he,

¹ Three lines with red capital *A* and small *a* in the margin beside.

'I pray 3ow sitt 3e still & etez & drynkez & bee3 mery.' Bot
 pay ware gretly troubled' and rase vp fra pe burdez and stode
 witowtten' for to see pe ende. And Alexander went in-till
 4 his chambir gretly tourmentid; and soghte a fethir for to putt
 in his throtte for to garre hym hafe a vomet of pe puyson
 pat he hadd' resayffed. And Iobas, pat was cheffe of all this
 hye treson, gatt a fethir & enoynt it wit pe same puyson
 8 & broghte it till Alexander; and he tuk it & putt it in his
 throtte, and belyfe * pe puyson vexed' hym ay mare & mare.
 And pan Alexander bade ane gange & open' pe palace zates
 pat ware on Eufrates banke. And alle pat nyzte he woke
 12 in grete paynez & tourment. And aboute mydnyzthte he rase
 oute of pe bedde pat he lay in and putt oute pe lyghte pat brynt
 by-fore hym, and for he myghte noghte ga vprightez, he creped'
 one hende & one fete doune to-warde Eufratez for till hafe
 16 drowned' hym selfe, pat pe strenth of pe water myzth hafe
 borne hym away whare neuer man solde hafe fuin' hym.

And Rosan' his wyfe folowed' as faste as scho myghte. And
 when' scho come to hym scho fesse vpon' hym & embraced' hym
 20 in hir armes & said' vn-till' hym: 'Allas, my lorde Alexander,'
 quop' scho, 'wilt' pou now leue me & gaa slaa thi-selfe.' And
 scho wepe pat it was dole to see; and Alexander ansuerde
 & sayde: 'I beseke pe Rosan', quop' he, 'pat ert so dere to me
 24 & so swete, late nane wit of myn' Endynge, if all it be pat we
 may na langare hafe ioy togedir.' And pan' Rosan' ledd'
 Alexander agayne to his bedd, and layde her armes aboute his
 nekke and kyssede hym many a tyme, and sare wepand' said'
 28 vn-till' hym: 'A, A, my swete lorde,' quop' scho, 'if pine ende be
 nowe comen', ordayne firste for vs or 3e passe hepine.' And
 onane he callede vn-till' hym Iobas & bade hym feche vn-till'
 hym Semyon' his notary. And when' he was comen' he garte
 32 bere hym down' in-to pe haulle, and he garte come by-fore hym
 all his prynce3 & bade his notary wryte his testament bi-fore
 pan' all on' pis wyse.

¹ A Restotle oure dere Maister, we comande the & prayse the,
 36 pat of oure awen' tresour pou sende to pe preste3 of Egipt pat
 ministrez in pe temple, whare-in oure body sail be beryed

He uses a
 feather to
 spew it
 forth, but
 again the
 feather is
 poisoned.

* Leaf 47
 bk.

In his
 agony he
 goes to the
 Euphrates
 to drown
 himself.

But his
 wife
 Roxana
 follows and
 prevents
 him
 and tries to
 console
 him.

She asks
 him first to
 provide for
 her.

He calls his
 notary.

He com-
 mands
 Aristotle
 to give to

¹ Three lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside, small capital R following.

the Egyptian priest of his mansoleum. Ptolemy is the governor. If Roxana bear a man child he shall be Emperor ; * Leaf 48. if a girl they shall choose their own. He appor-tions his domains.

The earthquake.

The Macedonians come armed and demand to see their Emperor.

He prays his knights bear him before them.

He praises them. They speak with him and pray

& entered, ȝ besanded; of golde. Also I will that Tholomeus þat es kepare of oure body be *your* Gouvernour, And forgetis noghte my laste will, Bot lateȝ my testament be alway bi-fore *your* eghne so þat it be fulfilled & noghte forgetyñ. My will es 4 also þat if Rosañ my wyfe be delyuer of a knafe childe þat he be *your* Emperour and gyffeȝ hym what name so ȝow liste, and if scho be delyuer of a mayden childe, þañ es it my will þat the Macedoynes chese þañ a kyng, and þat my wyfe be lady of * añ 8 my mobles. Also I will þat Tholomeus be kyng of Egipt, and þat he tak tiff his wyfe Cleopatra, þat my Fader wedded sum- tyme here bi-fore, and þat he be lorde & prynce ouer añ þe lordez of þe Este eueñ vn-to Bactriañ. Also I will þat my 12 broþer Arrideus be kyng of þe Pelopones, also þat Cleopater be kyng of Perse, Mellagere kyng of Ethopy, And Anthiochus be kyng vn-to þe landez of Gog & magoge, Aresteȝ kyng of Inde, Lissymacus lorde of Seleuce, Lythamoñ kyng of hungary, Caulus 16 kyng of Ermony, Illicus kyng of Dalmace. Symeoñ my Notary, will I, be Kyng of Capadoce & Pamphily, Cassander & Iobas be lordez vn-to þe Ryuer þat es called Soñ, Antipater þaire Fader be kyng of Cicile.' Wheñ this testament was in wrytynge 20 bi-fore Alexander Sodeynly þare come a thonnere & a leuennyng & ane erthedouñ riȝte a hedcus, so þat añ babyloyne qwoke þare-wit. And than thorowte añ Babyloyne þe noyse rase þat Alexander was dede. And þañ añ þe Macedoynes rasse hallely 24 and come armed to þe Palace, and cryed on þe prynceȝ & said vn-to þañ : 'Sothely,' quop þay, 'but if ȝe onane schewe vs oure Emperour we sañ slaa ȝow ilk ane.' And wheñ kyng Alexander herde swilke noyse he askede whate it ment, and þe prynceȝ 28 ansuerde & sayde : 'Þe Macedoynes,' quop þay, 'are comen armede hedir before þe ȝates, & says sekerly bot if þay see ȝow þay sañ slaa vs añ are þay passe hepine.' And wheñ Alexander herde þis, he badd' his knyghtis þat þay scholde take hym vp, and bere 32 hym in-to þe consistorye. And þay did soo. And þañ he garte open þe Palace ȝates þat þe Macedoynes myȝte come by-fore hym. And þañ kyng Alexander be-gañ to comend' þañ of þaire strenth & þaire grete doghtynes, and charged þañ þat 36 þay scholde be in pesse & reste ilkane wit oper. Þañ þe Macedoynes, sare wepande, sayde vn-tiff Alexander : 'A, A, wirchipfull,' quop þay, 'ordayne & tette vs are ȝe passe

heyne wham̄ 3e will þat be oure emperour efter 3ow.' And Alexander ansuerd̄ & sayde, 'A, A, my dere knyghtis,' quop he, 'whēn I am dede whaym̄ so 3e will chese, be 3our emperour 4 efter mee.' And þay ansuerde, 'Lord,' quop þay, 'we beseke 3owe þat 3e will graunt vs Perdic to be oure Emperour.' 'I vouche wele saffe,' quop Alexander, 'þat Perdic be 3our Emperour. Gers hym come be-fore mee.' ¹And whēn he was 8 comēn by-fore hym he gaffe hym þe kyngdome* of Macedoyne wīt þe Emperourchipe. And he gaffe hym also Rosañ for to be his wyffe, and prayed̄ hym þat he walde be gude & gentill till hir. And þan he kyssede all þe lordez & þe knyghtis of 12 Macedoyne ilkane after oper, and sighed and weped̄ wonder sare. Pare was þañ so grete dole & wepynge, þat it was lyke a thonere. For meñ Supposez þat nozte allanly meñ made Sorow for þe dede of so worthy ane Emperour, Bot also þe soñ 16 and all þe oper planetis and elementes ware troubled.

²A prynce of Macedoyne stode nere Alexander bedd̄ þat highte Seleucus, & wīt grete dole & wepynge he sayd̄: 'A, A, þou wirchipfull emperour,' quop he, 'what sañt we do whēn þou 20 ert dede. Philippe þi fader gouerned̄ vs wele & alle oure rewme, Bot þe gentilnes & þe largesse of the na tunge may tell.' And þañ Alexander sett̄ hym vp in his bedd̄ and gaffe hym̄ selfe a grete flappe on þe cheke and by-gañ for to wepe rizte 24 bitterly, and in þe langage of Macedoyne, he sayde on þis wyse :

'Full waa es me vnhappy wreche,' quop he, 'þat euer I was borne to mañ. For now Alexander dyes and Macedoyne sañt waxe ay lesse & lesse and emenische day bi day.' Thañ all þe Macedoynes wīt an hye voyce and bitter wepynge sayd vn-till hym : 'Better it ware till vs,' quop þay, 'for to dy wīt þe þañ for to se þe dy in oure presence. For wele we wate þat, efter þe dede of the, þe kyngdom̄ of Macedoyne es vndone for euere. 32 Allas oure wirchipfull Alexander, why leses þou vs here and wendez away be thyñ ane, withowteñ thi Macedoynes?' Thañ kyng Alexander alway sighand̄ & wepand̄ said vn-to þam : 'A, A, my dere Macedoynes,' quop he, 'fra this tyñ forwarde 36 sañt neuer 3our name hafe lordchipe ouer þe Barbarenes.' And þañ þe Macedoynes cryed̄ and sayde : 'O wirchipfull lorde,' quop

him for Perdicas for their king.

He gives

* Leaf 48 bk.

Perdicas Macedonia and the Emperourship, and also Roxana as wife.

He kisses all the Macedonian Lords.

Seleucus grieues by Alexander's bedside that they shall have no good leader.

Alexander bewails his fate that Macedonia shall dwindle with his death. All the Macedonians say it were better to die with him.

The grief of the Macedonians.

¹ Three lines with red capital A, and smaller a in the margin beside.

² Four lines with red capital A, and small a in the margin beside.

Alexander sends rich gifts to the Temple of Apollo in Athens and makes order for the embalming of his body.

* Leaf 49.
His death.

The funeral of Alexander.

His burial and wonderful tomb.

The description of Alexander.

The years of his life and his warlike deeds.

pay, 'pou ledd' vs in-to Perse, Arraby, and Inde, and vn-to the werldeꝝ ende, and in-to what cuntree þat þe liste wende; why, lorde, fleez þou now fra vs? Lede vs wit the whedir so þou gase.' Það kyng Alexander sent to þe templee of Appollo in Athenes many riche iowels, and on þe same wyse till all oper temples. And það he commanded þat when he ware dede, þay schulde enoynte his body and embawme it wit riche oynementes, þe whilke kepis menes bodys in graues wit-owtten corupcioun. Það he badde Tholomeus þat he scholde [take] a ẽ besantes of golde, & pare-off gere make hym a tombe in Alexander. And onane * as he had commanded hym þus, one-seeand það all, he swelt. And það his prynceꝝ lifte vp his body, and did apoñ his clethyng of astate and putt a riche coron on his heued, and sett hym in þe emperours chayer, þe whilke twelue prynceꝝ drewe wit þaire bresteꝝ fra Babiloyne till Alexander. Tholomeus went alway bi-fore þe chayere wepande & sayande one þis wyse: 'Full waa es me, My lord Alexander, waa es me. For in all thi lyfe slew þou neuer so many meñ as þou dose nowe after þi dede.' All Alexanders knyghtis also weped' & made grete dole & sayde on þis wyse: 'Waa es vs wrechis! whatt schaff we now do after þe dede of oure lorde Alexander? Whedir schaff we now gaa or whate partye may we now chese? Whare schaff we now get any helpe till oure lyfelade?' One þis wyse þay went wepand after Alexander, till þay come till þe citee of Alexander. And þare þay beryed hym in a toumbe þat was rijte hye and wonder curyouslye wroghte. Þis tombe was all of syne golde sett full of precyous stanes, and on þat toumbe þer was sett xxx ymages of golde wonder craftily made.

¹ Alexander was a mañ bot of a comon stature, wit a lange nekke, Faire eghne & glad; his chekes ruddy, and all þe remenant of his lymmes ware faire & semely & lyke vn-till a lorde. He ouercome all meñ & neuer was ouercomeñ. The lenthe of his lyffe was xxxij zere, twa & thritty zere & seuē monethes. Fra þe twentyd zere of his birthe he gaffe hym to werre, and in twelue zere he conquered all þe werlde, and made subiect un-till hym alkyñ nacyonns. Seuē monethes he ristede hym. He was borne on þe vij kl of January, and dyed on þe vij kl of August.

¹ Large red capital A.

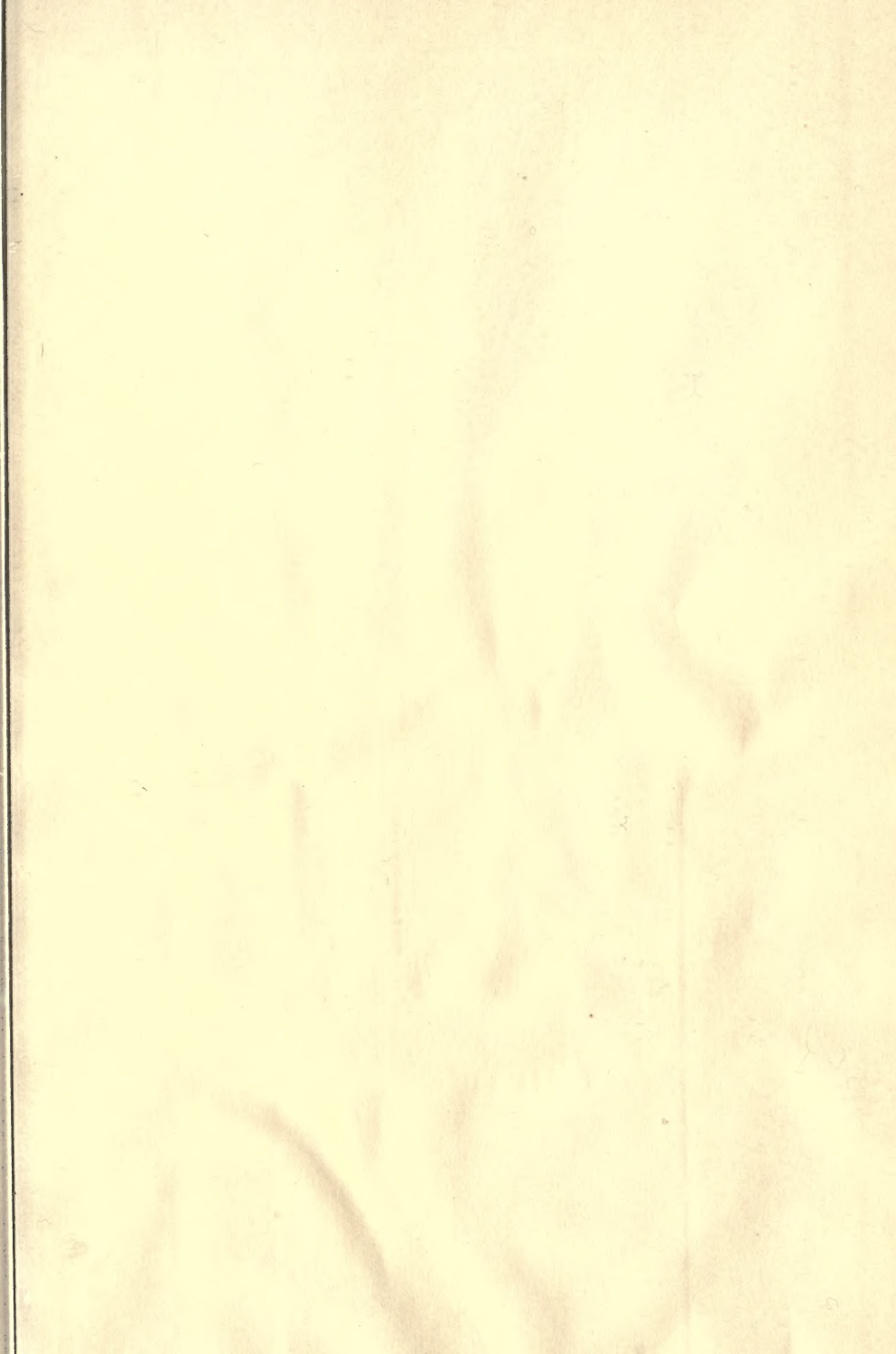
He byggid also in his lyfe xij grete citeez pat hider-to-wardez
bene enhabyt, and pis are paire names. Firste *Alexander* pat
es called yprysilicas, þe secund *Alexander* es called *Bepyporum*,
4 þe thrid *Alexander* es callede *Sithia*, þe ferthe *Alexander* es
called *Bicontristi*, þe fife *Alexander* es called *Peraucton*, þe sext
Alexander es called *Buctiphalon*, þe seuent es called vnder þe
ryuer of *Tygre*, þe aghtend *New Babiloyne*, þe nyend *Aptreadam*,
8 þe tend *Messagestes*, þe elleuend *Ypsyacon*, þe twelfed es called
Egipt.

The twelve
great cities
that he
built.

Explicit vita Alexandry magni conquestoris.

Here endez þe lyf of gret *Alexander conquerour* of all þe
12 worlde.





17 JAN 1964

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

